#### Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener

15. Februar 2007

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Introduction

•000000000000

Generalities

Course of Studies "Informatics", "Applied Informatics" and "Master-Inf." WS06/07 Prof. Dr. Madlener University of Kaiserslautern

Lecture:

Di 08.15-09.45 13/222 Fr 08.15-09.45 42/110

Exercises:

Fr. 11.45–13.15 11/201 Mo 11.45-13.15 13/370

- ▶ Information http://www-madlener.informatik.uni-kl.de/ teaching/ws2006-2007/fsvt/fsvt.html
- ► Evaluation method: Exercises (efficiency statement) + Final Exam (Credits)
- ► First final exam: (Written or Oral)
- Exercises (Dates and Registration): See WWW-Site

4 D > 4 B > 4 E > 4 E >

Introduction 0000000

#### **Bibliography**



M. O'Donnell.

Computing in Systems described by Equations, LNCS 58, 1977. Equational Logic as a Programming language.



J. Avenhaus.

Reduktionssysteme, (Skript), Springer 1995.



Cohen et.al.

The Specification of Complex Systems.



Bergstra et.al.

Algebraic Specification.



Functional Programming and Lambda Calculus. Handbook of TCS, 321-363, 1990.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Introduction 00000000000

Bibliograph

#### **Bibliography**



Software Specification Techniques.



Confluent Reductions: Abstract Properties and Applications to TRS, JACM, 27, 1980.



Algebraic Methods in Semantics.



Specification of Abstract Data Types, Wyley-Teubner, 1996.



Term Rewriting System. Handbook of Logic, INCS, Vol. 2, Abransky, Gabbay, Maibaum.

#### **Bibliography**

Ehrig, Mahr.

Fundamentals of Algebraic Specification.

Peyton-Jones.

The Implementation of Functional Programming Language.

Plasmeister, Eekelen.

Functional Programming and Parallel Graph Rewriting.

Astesiano, Kreowski, Krieg-Brückner.

Algebraic Foundations of Systems Specification (IFIP).

N. Nissanke.

Formal Specification Techniques and Applications (Z, VDM, algebraic), Springer 1999.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Introduction

OOOOOOOOOOOO

#### **Bibliography**

Turner, McCluskey.

The construction of formal specifications. (Modell basiert (VDM) + algebraisch (OBJ)).

Goguen, Malcom.

Algebraic Semantics of Imperative Programs.

H. Dörr.

Efficient Graph Rewriting and its Implementation.

B. Potter, J. Sinclair, D. Till.

An introduction to Formal Specification and Z. Prentice Hall, 1996.

#### **Bibliography**

J. Woodcok, J. Davis.

Using Z: Specification, Refinement and Proof, Prentice Hall 1996.

J.R. Abrial.

The B-Book; Assigning Programs to Meanings. Cambridge U. Press, 1996

E. Börger, R. Stärk

Abstract State Machines: A Method for High-Level System Design and Analysis. Springer, 2003.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Introduction

Goals

#### Goals - Contents

#### General Goals:

Formal foundations of Methods for Specification, Verification and Implementation

#### Summary

- ► The Role of formal Specifications
- ► Abstract State Machines: ASM-Specification methods
- ▶ Algebraic Specification, Equational Systems
- ▶ Reduction systems, Term Rewriting Systems
- ► Equational Calculus and Programming
- lacktriangle Related Calculi:  $\lambda$ -Calculus, Combinator- Calculus
- ▶ Implementation, Reduction Strategies, Graph Rewriting

#### 0000000000000

#### Content

Introduction

#### Lecture's Contents

#### Role of formal Specifications

Motivation Properties of Specifications Formal Specifications Examples

4日 4日 4日 4日 4日 99(

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Introduction

Contents

#### Abstract State Machines (ASMs)

#### Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

Fundamentals Sequential algorithms ASM-Specifications

#### Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time

Fundamentals: Orders, CPO's, proof techniques Induction DASM Reactive and time-depending systems

#### Refinement

Lecture Börger's ASM-Buch

#### Algebraic Specification

#### Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

**Fundamentals** 

Introduction

Algebrae

Algebraic Fundamentals

Signature - Terms

Strictness - Positions- Subterms

Interpretations: sig-algebras

Canonical homomorphisms

Equational specifications

Substitution

Incoherent semantics

Connection between  $\models$ ,  $=_E$ ,  $\vdash_E$ 

Birkhoff's Theorem

#### 4 D > 4 B > 4 B > 4 B > B 9 9 9

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Introduction

Contents

#### Algebraic Specification: Initial Semantics

#### Initial semantics

Basic properties

 $Correctness\ and\ implementation$ 

Structuring mechanisms

 $Signature\ morphisms\ -\ Parameter\ passing$ 

Semantics parameter passing Specification morphisms





#### Algebraic Specification: operationalization

#### Reduction Systems

Abstract Reduction Systems Principle of the Noetherian Induction

Important relations

Sufficient conditions for confluence

Equivalence relations and reduction relations

Transformation with the inference system

Construction of the proof ordering

#### Term Rewriting Systems

Principles

Critical pairs, unification

Local confluence

Confluence without Termination

Knuth-Bendix Completion





Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Introduction 0000000000000

Contents

#### Computability and Implementation

#### Equational calculus and Computability

**Implementations** 

Primitive Recursive Functions

Recursive and partially recursive functions

Partial recursive functions and register machines

Computable algebrae

#### Reduction strategies

Generalities

Orthogonal systems

Strategies and length of derivations

Sequential Orthogonal TES: Call by Need

#### Role of formal Specifications

- ▶ Software and hardware systems must accomplish well defined tasks (requirements).
- ► Software Engineering has as goal
  - ▶ Definition of criteria for the evaluation of SW-Systems
  - ▶ Methods and techniques for the development of SW-Systems, that accomplish such criteria
  - Characterization of SW-Systems
  - ► Development processes for SW-Systems
  - ► Measures and Supporting Tools
- ► Simplified view of a SD-Process:

Definition of a sequence of actions and descriptions for the SW-System to be developed

Goal: The group of documents that includes an executable program.

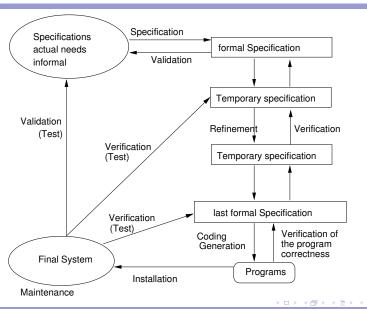
Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique Role of formal Specifications 

#### Models for SW-Development

▶ Waterfall model. Spiral model....

 $Phases \equiv Activities + Product Parts (partial descriptions)$ In each stage of the DP

Description: a SW specification, that is, a stipulation of what must be achieved, but not always how it is done.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Role of formal Specifications

Motivation

#### Comment

- ► First Specification: Global Specification
  Fundament for the Development
  "Contract or Agreement" between Developers and Client
- ► Intermediate (partial) specifications: Base of the Communication between Developers.
- ▶ Programs: Final products.

#### Development's paradigms

- ► Structured Programming
- ightharpoonup Design + Program
- ► Transformation Methods
- **.** . . .

Role of formal Specifications

Properties of Specifications

#### Properties of Specifications

#### Consistency

#### Completeness

- ▶ Validation of the global specification regarding the requirements.
- ▶ Verification of intermediate specifications regarding the last one.
- ▶ Verification of the programs regarding the specification.
- ▶ Verification of the integrated final system with respect to the global specification.
- ► Activities: Validation, Verification, Consistency- and Completeness-Check
- ► Tool support needed!

#### Requirements

Functional - what	<ul> <li>non functional time aspects</li> </ul>
: how	robustness stability adaptability
Duanantia	ergonomics maintainability

Properties

Correctness: Does the implemented System fulfill the Requirements?

Test Validate Verify

#### Requirements

- ► The global specification describes, as exact as possible, what must be done.
- ► Abstraction of the *how*

#### Advantages

- ▶ apriori: Reference document, compact and legible.
- aposteriori: Possibility to follow and document design decisions traceability, reusability, maintenance.
- ▶ Problem: Size and complexity of the systems.

#### Principles to be supported

- ▶ Refinement principle: Abstraction levels
- Structuring mechanisms
   Decomposition and modularization principles
- Object orientation

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Role of formal Specifications

Properties of Specifications

Verification and validation concepts



#### Requirements Description:: Specification Language

- ► Choice of the specification technique depends on the System. Frequently more than a single specification technique is needed. (What – How).
- Type of Systems: Pure function oriented (I/O), reactive- embedded- real timesystems.
- ► Problem: universal specification technique difficult to understand, ambiguities, tools, size . . . e.g. UML
- ▶ Desired: Compact, legible and exact specifications

Here: formal specification techniques

#### Formal Specifications

- ▶ A specification in a formal specification language defines all the possible behaviors of the specified system.
- ▶ 3 Aspects: Syntax, Semantics, Inference System
  - Syntax: What's allowed to write: Text with structure, Properties often described by formulas from a logic.
  - Semantics: Which models are associated with the specification, 
     specification models.
  - Inference System: Consequences (Derivation) of properties of the system.

#### Formal Specifications

#### ► Two main classes:

Model oriented **Property oriented** (declarative) (constructive) e.g.VDM, Z, ASM signature (functions, predicates) Construction of a **Properties** non-ambiguous model (formulas, axioms) from available data structures and models construction rules algebraic specification AFFIRM, OBJ, ASF, ... Concept of correctness

Operational specifications:
 Petri nets, process algebras, automata based (SDL).

- ▶ The concept of program correctness is not well defined without a formal specification.
- ▶ A verification is not possible without a formal specification.
- ▶ In this way the concept of refinement is well defined.

#### Wish List

- Small gap between specification and program: Generators. Transformators.
- ▶ Not too many different formalisms/notations.
- ► Tool support.
- Rapid prototyping.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

▶ Rules for construction specifications, that guarantee certain properties (e.g. consistency + completeness).





Role of formal Specifications

Formal Specifications

#### Formal Specifications

- ► Advantages:
  - ▶ The concepts of correctness, equivalence, completeness, consistency, refinement, composition, etc. are treated in a mathematical way (based on the logic)
  - ► Tool support is possible and often available
  - ▶ The application and interconnection of different tools are possible.
- ▶ Disadvantages:

Role of formal Specifications 

Formal Specifications

#### Refinements

#### Abstraction mechanisms

▶ Data abstraction

(representation)

► Control abstraction

(Sequence)

► Procedural abstraction

(only I/O description)

#### Refinement mechanisms

- ► Choose a data representation (sets by lists)
- ► Choose a sequence of computation steps
- Develop algorithm (Sorting algorithm)

#### Concept: Correctness of the implementation

- ► Observable equivalences
- ► Behavioral equivalences

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Role of formal Specifications

Formal Specifications

#### Structuring

#### **Problems:** Structuring mechanisms

► Horizontal:

Decomposition/Aggregation/Combination/Extension/

Parameterization/Instantiation

(Components)

#### Goal: Completeness

Vertical:

Realization of Behavior Information Hiding/Refinement

Goal: Efficiency and Correctness

- Syntactic support (grammars, parser,...)
- Verification: theorem proving (proof obligations)
- Prototyping (executable specifications)
- ► Code generation (out of the specifications generate C code)
- ▶ Testing (from the specification generate test cases for the program)

#### Desired:

To generate the tools out of the syntax and semantics of the specification language



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Role of formal Specifications 

Example: declarative

**Example 2.1.** Restricted logic: e.g. equational logic

- $ightharpoonup Axioms: \forall X \ t_1 = t_2$  $t_1, t_2$  terms.
- Rules: Equals are replaced with equals. (directed).
- ► Terms ≈ names for objects (identifier), structuring, construction of the object.
- ▶ Abstraction: Terms as elements of an algebra, term algebra.

Role of formal Specifications 

#### Example: declarative

Foundations for the algebraic specification method:

- ► Axioms induce a congruence on a term algebra
- ► Independent subtasks
  - Description of properties with equality axioms
  - ► Representation of the terms
- Operationalization
  - ▶ spec, t term give out the "value" of t, i.e.  $t' \in \mathsf{Value}(\mathsf{spec})$  with  $\mathsf{spec} \models t = t'$ .
  - ► → Functional programming: LISP, CAML,... eval( ) \sim value.  $F(t_1,\ldots,t_n)$

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Role of formal Specifications

Examples

#### Example: Model-based constructive: VDM

Unambiguous (Unique model), standard (notations), Independent of the implementation, formally manipulable, abstract, structured, expressive, consistency by construction

#### **Example 2.2.** Model (state)-based specification technique VDM

- ▶ Based on naive set theory, PL 1, preconditions and postconditions. *Primitive types:* B Boolean {true, false}  $\mathbb{N}$  *natural*  $\{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$
- ► Sets: B-Set: Sets of B-'s.
- ▶ Operations on sets:  $\in$ : Element, Element-Set  $\rightarrow \mathbb{B}$ ,  $\cup, \cap, \setminus$
- ▶ Sequences:  $\mathbb{Z}^*$ : Sequences of integer numbers.
- ► Sequence operations: ~: Sequences, Sequences → Sequences. .. Concatenation"

```
e.g. [] \sim [true, false, true] = [true, false, true]
                                       hd: sequences → elem (partial).
 len: sequences \rightarrow \mathbb{N},
 tl: sequences \rightarrow sequences, elem: sequences \rightarrow Elem-Set.
```

Examples

#### Operations in VDM

VDM-SL: System State, Specification of operations

Format:

Operation-Identifier (Input parameters) Output parameters Pre-Condition Post-Condition

e.g. 
$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Int\_SQR}(x:\mathbb{N})z:\mathbb{N} \\ &\text{pre} \quad x \geq 1 \\ &\text{post} \quad (z^2 \leq x) \land (x < (z+1)^2) \end{aligned}$$

ロ ト 4 樹 ト 4 草 ト 4 草 ト 3 草 9 9 9 9

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Role of formal Specifications

- -

#### Example VDM: Bounded stack

#### Example 2.3.

▶ Operations: · Init · Push · Pop · Empty · Full 23 45 78 78 78 29 29 29 Newstack 56 56 56 Pop Push (23) 78 78 78

 $\mathsf{Contents} = \mathbb{N}^* \qquad \mathsf{Max\_Stack\_Size} = \mathbb{N}$ 

STATE STACK OF

s : Contents

n: Max\_Stack\_Size

 $inv : mk-STACK(s, n) \triangleq len s \leq n$ 

**END** 

#### 

Role of formal Specifications

Example

#### Bounded stack

 $Init(size : \mathbb{N})$ Full() $b: \mathbb{B}$ ext wr s: Contents ext rd s: Contents wr n: Max Stack Size rd n: Max Stack Size pre true pre true post  $s = [] \land n = size$ post  $b \Leftrightarrow (\operatorname{len} s = n)$  $Push(c : \mathbb{N})$ Pop() $c:\mathbb{N}$ ext wr s: Contens ext wr s: Contens rd *n*: Max\_Stack\_Size pre len s > 0post  $\stackrel{\leftarrow}{s} = [c] \frown s$ pre len s < npost  $s = [c] \frown \overleftarrow{s}$ 

→ Proof-Obligations



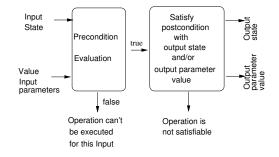
Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

25

Role of formal Specifications

Examples

#### General format for VDM-operations



#### General form VDM-operations

#### Proof obligations:

For each acceptable input there's (at least) one acceptable output.

$$\forall s_i, i \cdot (\mathsf{pre-op}(i, s_i) \Rightarrow \exists s_o, o \cdot \mathsf{post-op}(i, s_i, o, s_o))$$

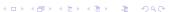
When there are state-invariants at hand:

$$\forall s_i, i \cdot (\mathsf{inv}(s_i) \land \mathsf{pre-op}(i, s_i) \Rightarrow \exists s_o, o \cdot (\mathsf{inv}(s_o) \land \mathsf{post-op}(i, s_i, o, s_o)))$$

alternatively

$$\forall s_i, i, s_o, o \cdot (\mathsf{inv}(s_i) \land \mathsf{pre-op}(i, s_i) \land \mathsf{post-op}(i, s_i, o, s_o) \Rightarrow \mathsf{inv}(s_o))$$

See e.g. Turner, McCluskey The Construction of Formal Specifications or Jones C.B. Systematic SW Development using VDM Prentice Hall.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

37

Role of formal Specifications

Examples

#### Stack: algebraic specification

**Example 2.4.** Elements of an algebraic specification: Signature (sorts, operation names with the arity), Axioms (often only equations)

SPEC STACK

USING NATURAL, BOOLEAN "Names of known SPECs"

SORT stack "Principal type"

*OPS* init:  $\rightarrow$  stack "Constant of the type stack, empty stack"

 $push: stack \ nat \rightarrow stack$ 

 $\textit{pop}: \textit{stack} \rightarrow \textit{stack}$ 

 $top : stack \rightarrow nat$ 

is empty? : stack  $\rightarrow$  bool

 $stack\_error: \rightarrow stack$ 

 $nat error : \rightarrow nat$ 

(Signature fixed)

#### 

#### Axioms for Stack

```
FORALL s:stack n:nat

AXIOMS

is_empty? (init) = true
is_empty? (push (s, n)) = false
pop (init) = stack_error
pop (push (s, n)) = s
top (init) = nat_error
top (push (s,n)) = n
```

#### Terms or expressions:

top (push (push (init, 2), 3)) "means" 3 How is the "bounded stack" specified algebraically? Semantics? Operationalization?

#### 4日 → 4周 → 4 章 → 4 章 → 9 Q Q

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Role of formal Specifications

Examples

#### Variant: Z and B- Methods: Specification-Development-Programs.

- ➤ Covering: Technical specification (what), development through refinement, architecture (layers' architecture), generation of executable code.
- ► Proofs: Program construction ≡ Proof construction. Abstraction, instantiation, decomposition.
- Abstract machines: Encapsulation of information (Modules, Classes, ADT).
- ▶ Data and operations: SWS is composed of abstract machines. Abstract machines "get " data and "offer" operations. Data can only be accessed through operations.

#### Z- and B- Methods: Specification-Development-Programs.

- ▶ Data specification: Sets, relations, functions, sequences, trees. Rules (static) with help of invariants.
- ▶ Operator specification: not executable "pseudocode".

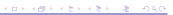
Without loops:

Precondition + atomic action

PL1 generalized substitution

- ▶ Refinement (~> implementation).
- Refinement (as specification technique).
- Refinement techniques:
   Elimination of not executable parts, introduction of control structures (cycles).

Transformation of abstract mathematical structures.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Role of formal Specifications

. .

Z- and B- Methods: Specification-Development-Programs.

- ▶ Refinement steps: Refinement is done in several steps.
  Abstract machines are newly constructed. Operations for users remain the same, only internal changes.
  In-between steps: Mix code.
- ► Nested architecture:

Rule: not too many refinement steps, better apply decomposition.

- Library: Predefined abstract machines, encapsulation of classical DS.
- ► Reusability
- ► Code generation: Last abstract machine can be easily translated into a program in an imperative Language.

#### Z- and B- Methods: Specification-Development-Programs.

#### Important here:

- Notation: Theory of sets + PL1, standard set operations, Cartesian product, power sets, set restrictions  $\{x \mid x \in s \land P\}$ , P predicate.
- ► Schemata (Schemes) in *Z* Models for declaration and constraint {state descriptions}.
- Types.
- Natural Language: Connection Math objects → objects of the modeled world.
- ► See Abrial: The B-Book, Potter, Sinclair, Till: An Introduction to Formal Specification and Z, Woodcock, Davis: Using Z Specification, Refinement, and Proof ~> Literature

#### Introduction to ASM: Fundamentals

Adaptable and flexible specification's technique

Modeling in the correct abstraction level

Natural and easy understandable semantics.

Material: See http://www.di.unipi.it/AsmBook/

#### Abstract state machines as computation models

Turing Machines (RAM, part.rec. Fct,...) serve as computation model, e.g. fixing the notion of computable functions. In principle is possible to simulate every algorithmic solution with an appropriate TM.

**Problem**: Simulation is not easy, because there are different abstraction levels of the manipulated objects and different granularity of the steps.

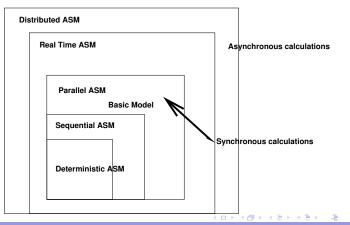
Question: Is it possible to generalize the TM in such a way that every algorithm, independent from it's abstraction level, can be naturally and faithfully simulated with such generalized machine?

How would the states and instructions of such a machine look like?

Easy: If Condition Then Action

#### **ASM Thesis**

ASM Thesis The concept of abstract state machine provides a universal computation model with the ability to simulate arbitrary algorithms on their natural levels of abstraction. Yuri Gurevich



Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

Sequential algorithms

#### Sequential ASM Thesis

- ► The model of the sequential ASM's is universal for all the sequential algorithms.
- ► Each sequential algorithm, independent from his abstraction level, can be simulated step by step by a sequential ASM.

To confirm this thesis we need definitions for sequential algorithms and for sequential ASM's.

→ Postulates for sequentiality



#### Sequentiality Postulates

Sequential time: Computations are linearly arranged.

► Abstract states:

Each kind of static mathematical reality can be represented by a structure of the first order logic (PL 1). (Tarski)

► Bounded exploration:

Each computation step depends only on a finite (depending only on the algorithm) bounded state information.

Y. Gurevich:: Sequential Abstract State Machines Capture Sequential Algorithms, ACM Transactions on Computational Logic, 1, 2000, 77-111.



#### Sequential time

Let A be a sequential algorithm. To A belongs:

- A set (Set of states) S(A) of States of A.
- $\blacktriangleright$  A subset I(A) of S(A) which elements are called initial states of A.
- ▶ A mapping  $\tau_A : S(A) \to S(A)$ , the one-step-function of A.

An run (or a computation) of A is a finite or infinite sequence of states of Α

$$X_0, X_1, X_2, \dots$$

in which  $X_0$  is an initial state and  $\tau_A(X_i) = X_{i+1}$  holds for each i.

Logical time and not physical time.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Abstract State Machines: ASM. Specification's method 

Sequential algorithms

#### **Abstract States**

**Definition 3.1** (Equivalent algorithms). Algorithms A and B are equivalent if S(A) = S(B), I(A) = I(B) and  $\tau_A = \tau_B$ . In particular equivalent algorithms have the same runs.

Let A be a sequential algorithm:

- ▶ States of A are first order (PL1) structures .
- ▶ All the states of A have the same vocabulary (signature).
- ▶ The one-step-function don't change the basic set B(X) of a state.
- $\triangleright$  S(A) and I(A) are closed to isomorphisms and each isomorphism from state X to state Y is also an isomorphism of state  $\tau_A(X)$  to  $\tau_A(Y)$ .

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method 

Sequential algorithms

#### Exercises

States: Signatures, interpretations, terms, ground terms, value ... Signatures (vocabulary): functions and relations' names, arity (n > 0)

Assumption: true, false, undef (constants), Boole (monadic) and = are contained in every signature.

The interpretation of *true* is different from the one for *false*, *undef*.

Relations are considered as functions with the value of true, false in the interpretations.

Monadic relations are seen as subsets of the basic set of the interpretations.

Let Val(t, X) be the value in state X for a ground term t that is in the vocabulary.

Functions are divided in dynamic and static, according whether they can change or not, when a state transition occurs.

Exercise: Model the states of a TM as an abstract state.

Model the states of the standard Euclidean algorithm.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

Sequential algorithm

#### Bounded exploration

▶ Parallelism: Consider the following graph-reachability algorithm that iterates the following step. ( It is assumed that at the beginning only one node satisfies the unary relation R.)

do for all 
$$x, y$$
 with  $Edge(x, y) \land R(x) \land \neg R(y)$   $R(y) := true$ 

In each computation step an unbounded number of local changes is made on a global state.

► Unbounded-step-information:

Test for isolated nodes in a graph:

if  $\forall x \exists y \; Edge(x, y)$  then Output := false else Output := true

In one step only bounded local changes are made, though an unbounded part of the state is considered in one step.

How can these properties be formalized? → Atomic actions

#### 

#### Update sets

Consider the structure X as memory: If f is a function name of arity iand  $\bar{a}$  a i-tuple of basic elements from X, then the pair  $(f, \bar{a})$  is called a location and  $Content_X(f, \overline{a})$  is the value of the interpretation of f for  $\overline{a}$  in Χ.

Is  $(f, \overline{a})$  a location of X and b an element of X, so  $(f, \overline{a}, b)$  is called an update of X. The update is trivial when  $b = Content_X(f, \overline{a})$ .

To make an update, the actual content of the location is replaced by b. A set of updates of X is consistent when in the set there is no pair of updates with the same location and different values. A set  $\Delta$  of updates is executed by making all updates in the set simultaneously (in case the set is consistent, in other case nothing is done). The result is denoted by  $X + \Delta$ .

**Lemma 3.2.** If X, Y are structures over the same signature and with the same basic set, then there is a unique consistent set  $\Delta$  of non-trivial updates of X with  $Y = X + \Delta$ . Let  $\Delta = Y - X$ .



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Abstract State Machines: ASM. Specification's method

Sequential algorithms

#### Update sets of algorithms, Reachable elements

**Definition 3.3.** Let X be a state of algorithm A. According to the definition, X and  $\tau_A(X)$  have the same signature and basic set. Set:

$$\Delta(A,X) \leftrightharpoons \tau_A(X) - X$$
 i.e.  $\tau_A(X) = X + \Delta(A,X)$ 

How can we bring up the elements of the basic set in the description of the algorithm at all?

→ Over the ground terms of the signature.

**Definition 3.4** (Reachable element). An element a of a structure X is reachable when a = Val(t, X) for a ground term t in the vocabulary of X. A location  $(f, \overline{a})$  of X is reachable when each element in the tuple  $\overline{a}$  is reachable.

An update  $(f, \bar{a}, b)$  of X is reachable when  $(f, \bar{a})$  and b are reachable.

4 D > 4 B > 4 B > 4 B >

Sequential algorithms

#### Bounded exploration postulate

Two structures X and Y with the same vocabulary Sig coincide on a set T of Sig- terms, when Val(t,X)=Val(t,Y) for all  $t\in T$  . The vocabulary (signature) of an algorithm is the vocabulary of his states.

Let A be a sequential algorithm.

▶ There exist a finite set *T* of terms in the vocabulary of *A*, so that:  $\Delta(A, X) = \Delta(A, Y)$ , for all states X, Y of A, that coincide on T.

Intuition: Algorithm A examines only the part of a state that is reachable with the set of terms T. If two states coincide on this term-set, then the update-sets of the algorithm for both states should be the same.

The set T is a bounded-exploration witness for A.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

Sequential algorithms

#### Example

#### **Example 3.5.** Consider algorithm A:

if 
$$P(f)$$
 then  $f := S(f)$ 

States with interpretations with basic set N. P subset of the natural numbers, for S the successor function and f a constant. Evidently A fulfills the postulates of sequential time and abstract states. One could believe that  $T_0 = \{f, P(f), S(f)\}\$  is a bounded-exploration witness for A. Let X be the canonical state of A with f = 0 and P(0) holds.

Set a = Val(true, X) and b = Val(false, X), so that

$$Val(P(0), X) = Val(true, X) = a.$$

Let Y be the state that is obtained out of X through reinterpretation of true as b and false as a, i.e. Val(true, Y) = b and Val(false, Y) = a. The value of f and P(0) is not changed:

Val(P(0), Y) = a, thus P(0) is not valid in Y.

Consequently X, Y coincide on  $T_0$  but  $\Delta(A, X) \neq \emptyset = \Delta(A, Y)$ .

The set  $T = T_0 \cup \{true\}$  is a bounded-exploration witness for A.

**Definition 3.6** (Sequential algorithm). A sequential algorithm is an object A, which fulfills the three postulates.

In particular A has a vocabulary and a bounded-exploration witness T. Without loss of generality (w.l.o.g.) T is subterm-closed and contains true, false, undef. The terms of T are called critical and their interpretations in a state X are called critical values in X.

**Lemma 3.7.** If  $(f, a_1, ..., a_i, a_0)$  is an update in  $\Delta(A, X)$ , then all the elements  $a_0, a_1, ..., a_i$  are critical values in X.

Proof: exercise (Proof by contradiction).

The set of the critical terms does not depend of X, thus there is a fixed upper bound for the size of  $\Delta(A, X)$  and A changes in every step a bounded number of locations. Each one of the updates in  $\Delta(A, X)$  is an atomic action of A. I.e.  $\Delta(A, X)$  is a bounded set of atomic actions of A.

57

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Abstract State Machines: ASM. Specification's method 

Sequential algorithm

#### Update rules

**Definition 3.8** (Update rule). An update rule over the signature Sig has the form

$$f(t_1,...,t_j):=t_0$$

in which f is a function and  $t_i$  are (ground) terms in Sig. To fire the rule in the Sig-structure X, compute the values  $a_i = Val(t_i, X)$  and execute update  $((f, a_1, ..., a_i), a_0)$  over X.

Parallel update rule over Sig: Let  $R_i$  be update rules over Sig, then par

 $R_1$  $R_2$ 

Notation: Block (when empty skip)

 $R_k$ endpar

fires through simultaneously firing of  $R_i$ .

4 D > 4 B > 4 B > 4 B >

#### Sequential ASM-programs

**Definition 3.9** (Semantics of update rules). *If R is an update rule*  $f(t_1,...,t_i) := t_0$  and  $a_i = Val(t_i,X)$  then set  $\Delta(R,X) \leftrightharpoons \{(f,(a_1,...,a_i),a_0)\}$ 

If R is a par-update rule with components  $R_1, ..., R_k$  then set  $\Delta(R,X) \leftrightharpoons \Delta(R1,X) \cup \cdots \cup \Delta(Rk,X).$ 

**Consequence 3.10.** There exists in particular for each state X a rule  $R^X$  that uses only critical terms with  $\Delta(R^X, X) = \Delta(A, X)$ .

Notice: If X, Y coincide on the critical terms, then  $\Delta(R^X, Y) = \Delta(A, Y)$ holds. If X, Y are states and  $\Delta(R^X, Z) = \Delta(A, Z)$  for a state Z, that is isomorph to Y, then also  $\Delta(R^X, Y) = \Delta(A, Y)$  holds. Consider the equivalence relation  $E_X(t1, t2) = Val(t1, X) = Val(t2, X)$  on T. X, Yare T-similar, when  $E_X = E_Y \rightsquigarrow \Delta(R^X, Y) = \Delta(A, Y)$ . Exercise

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Abstract State Machines: ASM. Specification's method 

Sequential algorithm

#### Sequential ASM-programs

**Definition 3.11.** Let  $\varphi$  be a boolean term over Sig and  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$  rules over Sig, then

if  $\varphi$  then  $R_1$ else R2 endif

is a rule

Semantic:: To fire the rule in state X evaluate  $\varphi$  in X. If the result is true, then  $\Delta(R,X) = \Delta(R_1,X)$ , if not  $\Delta(R,X) = \Delta(R_2,X)$ .

**Definition 3.12** (Sequential ASM program). A sequential ASM program  $\Pi$  over the signature Sig is a rule over Sig. According to this  $\Delta(\Pi, X)$  is well defined for each Sig-structure X. Let  $\tau_{\Pi}(X) \leftrightharpoons X + \Delta(\Pi, X).$ 

**Lemma 3.13.** Basic result: For each sequential algorithm A over Sig there's a sequential ASM-programm  $\Pi$  over Sig with  $\Delta(\Pi, X) = \Delta(A, X)$ for all the states X of A.

#### Sequential ASM-machines

**Definition 3.14** (A sequential abstract-state-machine (seq-ASM)). A seq-ASM B over the signature  $\Sigma$  is given through:

- ightharpoonup A sequential ASM-programm Π over  $\Sigma$ .
- ▶ A set S(B) of interpretations of  $\Sigma$  that is closed under isomorphisms and under the mapping  $\tau_{\Pi}$ .
- ▶ A subset  $I(B) \subset S(B)$ , that is closed under isomorphisms.

**Theorem 3.15.** For each sequential algorithm A there is an equivalent sequential ASM.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

Sequential algorithms

#### Example

**Example 3.16.** Maximal interval-sum.[Gries 1990]. Let A be a function from  $\{0, 1, ..., n-1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $i, j, k \in \{0, 1, ..., n\}$ .

For 
$$i \leq j$$
:  $S(i,j) \rightleftharpoons \sum_{i \leq k \leq i} A(k)$ . In particular  $S(i,i) = 0$ .

**Problem:** Compute  $S \rightleftharpoons \max_{i \le i} S(i, j)$ .

Define 
$$y(k) \rightleftharpoons \max_{i \le j \le k} S(i,j)$$
. Then  $y(0) = 0$ ,  $y(n) = S$  and

$$y(k+1) = \max\{\max_{i \le i \le k} S(i,j), \max_{i \le k+1} S(i,k+1)\} = \max\{y(k), x(k+1)\}$$

where 
$$x(k) \rightleftharpoons \max_{i \le k} S(i, k)$$
, thus  $x(0) = 0$  and

$$\begin{split} x(k+1) &= \max\{\max_{i \leq k} S(i,k+1), S(k+1,k+1)\} \\ &= \max\{\max_{i \leq k} (S(i,k) + A(k)), 0\} \\ &= \max\{(\max_{i \leq k} S(i,k)) + A(k), 0\} \\ &= \max\{x(k) + A(k), 0\} \end{split}$$

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

Sequential algorithms

#### Continuation of the example

Due to  $y(k) \ge 0$ , we have

$$y(k+1) = \max\{y(k), x(k+1)\} = \max\{y(k), x(k) + A(k)\}$$

**Assumption:** The 0-ary dynamic functions k, x, y are 0 in the initial state. The required algorithm is then

$$if \quad k \neq n \quad then$$

$$par$$

$$x := max\{x + A(k), 0\}$$

$$y := max\{y, x + A(k)\}$$

$$k := k + 1$$

$$else \quad S := y$$

#### Exercise 3.17. Simulation

 $Define\ an\ ASM,\ that\ implements\ Markov's\ Normal-algorithms.$ 

e.g. for 
$$ab \rightarrow A$$
,  $ba \rightarrow B$ ,  $c \rightarrow C$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

: F = \*) Q

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### **Detailed definition of ASMs**

- Part 1: Abstract states and update sets
- Part 2: Mathematical Logic
- Part 3: Transition rules and runs of ASMs
- Part 4: The reserve of ASMs

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland



#### Part 1

Abstract states and update sets

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

ロト 4回 ト 4 重 ト 4 重 ト 9 9 0

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

65

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### **Signatures**

**Definition.** A *signature*  $\Sigma$  is a finite collection of function names.

- Each function name f has an *arity*, a non-negative integer.
- Nullary function names are called *constants*.
- Function names can be *static* or *dynamic*.
- Every ASM signature contains the static constants undef, true, false.

Signatures are also called vocabularies.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland.



# function/relation/location function/relation/location basic derived static dynamic in controlled shared (interaction)

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

7 4 E 7 4 E 7 E 7)4

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### States

**Definition.** A state  $\mathfrak{A}$  for the signature  $\Sigma$  is a non-empty set X, the superuniverse of  $\mathfrak{A}$ , together with an interpretation  $f^{\mathfrak{A}}$  of each function name f of  $\Sigma$ .

- lacksquare If f is an n-ary function name of  $\Sigma$ , then  $f^{\mathfrak{A}}:X^n \to X$ .
- If c is a constant of  $\Sigma$ , then  $c^{\mathfrak{A}} \in X$ .
- The superuniverse X of the state  $\mathfrak A$  is denoted by  $|\mathfrak A|$ .
- The superuniverse is also called the *base set* of the state.
- The *elements* of a state are the elements of the superuniverse.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland.

□ ▶ ◆ 個 ▶ ◆ 恵 ▶ ◆ 恵 ▶ ● ● ● ● ● ●

#### Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### States (continued)

- The interpretations of undef, true, false are pairwise different.
- The constant *undef* represents an undetermined object.
- The *domain* of an n-ary function name f in  $\mathfrak A$  is the set of all n-tuples  $(a_1,\ldots,a_n)\in |\mathfrak A|^n$  such that  $f^{\mathfrak A}(a_1,\ldots,a_n)\neq undef^{\mathfrak A}$ .
- A *relation* is a function that has the values true, false or undef.
- We write  $a \in R$  as an abbreviation for R(a) = true.
- The superuniverse can be divided into subuniverses represented by unary relations.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland.

→ 4周→ 4 B → 4 B → 9 Q Q

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

**Definition.** A *location* of  $\mathfrak A$  is a pair

$$(f,(a_1,\ldots,a_n))$$

Locations

where f is an n-ary function name and  $a_1,\ldots,a_n$  are elements of  $\mathfrak A.$ 

- The value  $f^{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1,\ldots,a_n)$  is the *content* of the location in  $\mathfrak{A}$ .
- The *elements* of the location are the elements of the set  $\{a_1, \ldots, a_n\}$ .
- lacktriangle We write  $\mathfrak{A}(l)$  for the content of the location l in  $\mathfrak{A}$ .

**Notation.** If  $l = (f, (a_1, \dots, a_n))$  is a location of  $\mathfrak A$  and  $\alpha$  is a function defined on  $|\mathfrak A|$ , then  $\alpha(l) = (f, (\alpha(a_1), \dots, \alpha(a_n)))$ .

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

#### (B) 4 를 > 4 를 > 4 면 > (B)

#### Updates and update sets

**Definition.** An *update* for  $\mathfrak A$  is a pair (l,v), where l is a location of  $\mathfrak A$  and v is an element of  $\mathfrak A$ .

- The update is *trivial*, if  $v = \mathfrak{A}(l)$ .
- An *update set* is a set of updates.

**Definition.** An update set U is *consistent*, if it has no clashing updates, i.e., if for any location l and all elements v, w, if  $(l, v) \in U$  and  $(l, w) \in U$ , then v = w.

vright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

<ロト <部ト < 注 > < 注 > ・ 注 ・ り

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Firing of updates

**Definition.** The result of *firing* a consistent update set U in a state  $\mathfrak A$  is a new state  $\mathfrak A + U$  with the same superuniverse as  $\mathfrak A$  such that for every location l of  $\mathfrak A$ :

$$(\mathfrak{A}+U)(l) = \begin{cases} v, & \text{if } (l,v) \in U; \\ \mathfrak{A}(l), & \text{if there is no } v \text{ with } (l,v) \in U. \end{cases}$$

The state  $\mathfrak{A} + U$  is called the *sequel* of  $\mathfrak{A}$  with respect to U.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerla

ASM-Specifications

#### Homomorphisms and isomorphisms

Let  $\mathfrak A$  and  $\mathfrak B$  be two states over the same signature.

**Definition.** A homomorphism from  $\mathfrak A$  to  $\mathfrak B$  is a function  $\alpha$ from  $|\mathfrak{A}|$  into  $|\mathfrak{B}|$  such that  $\alpha(\mathfrak{A}(l)) = \mathfrak{B}(\alpha(l))$  for each location l of  $\mathfrak{A}$ .

**Definition.** An *isomorphism* from  $\mathfrak A$  to  $\mathfrak B$  is a homomorphism from  $\mathfrak{A}$  to  $\mathfrak{B}$  which is a ono-to-one function from  $|\mathfrak{A}|$  onto  $|\mathfrak{B}|$ .

**Lemma (Isomorphism).** Let  $\alpha$  be an isomorphism from  $\mathfrak A$  to  $\mathfrak B$ . If U is a consistent update set for  $\mathfrak{A}$ , then  $\alpha(U)$  is a consistent update set for  $\mathfrak{B}$  and  $\alpha$  is an isomorphism from  $\mathfrak{A}+U$  to  $\mathfrak{B}+\alpha(U)$ .

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerl

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Composition of update sets

 $U \oplus V = V \cup \{(l, v) \in U \mid \text{there is no } w \text{ with } (l, w) \in V\}$ 

**Lemma.** Let U, V, W be update sets.

- $\blacksquare (U \oplus V) \oplus W = U \oplus (V \oplus W)$
- ullet If U and V are consistent, then  $U \oplus V$  is consistent.
- $\blacksquare$  If U and V are consistent, then  $\mathfrak{A} + (U \oplus V) = (\mathfrak{A} + U) + V$ .

Copyright (c) 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland



#### Part 2

Mathematical Logic

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### **Terms**

Let  $\Sigma$  be a signature.

**Definition.** The *terms* of  $\Sigma$  are syntactic expressions generated as follows:

- $\blacksquare$  Variables  $x, y, z, \ldots$  are terms.
- lacktriangle Constants c of  $\Sigma$  are terms.
- If f is an n-ary function name of  $\Sigma$ , n > 0, and  $t_1, \ldots, t_n$  are terms, then  $f(t_1, \ldots, t_n)$  is a term.
- A term which does not contain variables is called a *ground term*.
- A term is called *static*, if it contains static function names only.
- By  $t\frac{s}{x}$  we denote the result of replacing the variable x in term teverywhere by the term s (substitution of s for x in t).

Copyright (c) 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method 

Let  $\mathfrak A$  be a state.

**Definition.** A variable assignment for  $\mathfrak A$  is a finite function  $\zeta$ which assigns elements of  $|\mathfrak{A}|$  to a finite number of variables.

• We write  $\zeta[x\mapsto a]$  for the variable assignment which coincides with  $\zeta$ except that it assigns the element a to the variable x:

$$\zeta[x\mapsto a](y) = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} a, & \text{if } y=x;\\ \zeta(y), & \text{otherwise.} \end{array} \right.$$

■ Variable assignments are also called *environments*.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerlar

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### **Evaluation of terms**

**Definition.** Let  $\mathfrak{A}$  be a state of  $\Sigma$ .

Let  $\zeta$  be a variable assignment for  $\mathfrak{A}$ .

Let t be a term of  $\Sigma$  such that all variables of t are defined in  $\zeta$ . The value  $[t]^{\mathfrak{A}}_{C}$  is defined as follows:

$$\blacksquare \llbracket x \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}^{\mathfrak{A}} = \zeta(x)$$

Copyright (c) 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

#### **Evaluation of terms (continued)**

**Lemma (Coincidence).** If  $\zeta$  and  $\eta$  are two variable assignments for t such that  $\zeta(x) = \eta(x)$  for all variables x of t, then  $[t]_{\mathcal{L}}^{\mathfrak{A}} = [t]_{n}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ 

**Lemma** (Homomorphism). If  $\alpha$  is a homomorphism from  $\mathfrak{A}$  to  $\mathfrak{B}$ , then  $\alpha(\llbracket t \rrbracket_{\ell}^{\mathfrak{A}}) = \llbracket t \rrbracket_{\alpha \circ \ell}^{\mathfrak{B}}$  for each term t.

**Lemma (Substitution).** Let  $a = [s]_{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ 

Then 
$$\llbracket t \frac{s}{x} \rrbracket_{\zeta}^{\mathfrak{A}} = \llbracket t \rrbracket_{\zeta[x \mapsto a]}^{\mathfrak{A}}$$
.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### **Formulas**

Let  $\Sigma$  be a signature.

**Definition.** The *formulas* of  $\Sigma$  are generated as follows:

- $\blacksquare$  If s and t are terms of  $\Sigma$ , then s=t is a formula.
- $\blacksquare$  If  $\varphi$  is a formula, then  $\neg \varphi$  is a formula.
- $\blacksquare$  If  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  are formulas, then  $(\varphi \land \psi)$ ,  $(\varphi \lor \psi)$  and  $(\varphi \to \psi)$ are formulas.
- $\blacksquare$  If  $\varphi$  is a formula and x a variable, then  $(\forall x \varphi)$  and  $(\exists x \varphi)$  are
- $\blacksquare$  A formula s=t is called an *equation*.
- The expression  $s \neq t$  is an abbreviation for  $\neg (s = t)$ .

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method 

ASM-Specifications

#### Formulas (continued)

symbol	name	meaning
Г	negation	not
$\wedge$	conjunction	and
V	disjunction	or (inclusive)
$\rightarrow$	implication	if-then
$\forall$	universal quantification	for all
3	existential quantification	there is

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Formulas (continued)

$$\begin{split} \varphi \wedge \psi \wedge \chi & \text{ stands for } ((\varphi \wedge \psi) \wedge \chi), \\ \varphi \vee \psi \vee \chi & \text{ stands for } ((\varphi \vee \psi) \vee \chi), \\ \varphi \wedge \psi \to \chi & \text{ stands for } ((\varphi \wedge \psi) \to \chi), \text{ etc.} \end{split}$$

- The variable x is **bound** by the quantifier  $\forall$  ( $\exists$ ) in  $\forall x \varphi$  ( $\exists x \varphi$ ).
- The *scope* of x in  $\forall x \varphi (\exists x \varphi)$  is the formula  $\varphi$ .
- $\blacksquare$  A variable x occurs *free* in a formula, if it is not in the scope of a quantifier  $\forall x \text{ or } \exists x.$
- ullet By  $\varphi \frac{t}{x}$  we denote the result of replacing all free occurrences of the variable x in  $\varphi$  by the term t. (Bound variables are renamed.)

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

#### Semantics of formulas

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Coincidence, Substitution, Isomorphism

**Lemma (Coincidence).** If  $\zeta$  and  $\eta$  are two variable assignments for  $\varphi$  such that  $\zeta(x)=\eta(x)$  for all free variables x of  $\varphi$ , then  $[\![\varphi]\!]_{\mathcal{L}}^{\mathfrak{A}} = [\![\varphi]\!]_{\eta}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ 

**Lemma (Substitution).** Let t be a term and  $a = \llbracket t \rrbracket_{\mathcal{L}}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ . Then  $[\![\varphi \frac{t}{x}]\!]_{\zeta}^{\mathfrak{A}} = [\![\varphi]\!]_{\zeta[x\mapsto a]}^{\mathfrak{A}}.$ 

**Lemma (Isomorphism).** Let  $\alpha$  be an isomorphism from  $\mathfrak A$  to  $\mathfrak B$ . Then  $[\![\varphi]\!]_{\zeta}^{\mathfrak A} = [\![\varphi]\!]_{\alpha\circ\zeta}^{\mathfrak B}$ .

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland.

ASM-Specifications

#### Models

**Definition.** A state  $\mathfrak A$  is a *model* of  $\varphi$  (written  $\mathfrak A \models \varphi$ ), if  $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal C}^{\mathfrak A} = true$  for all variable assignments  $\zeta$  for  $\varphi$ .

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

1 ト 4 樹 ト 4 草 ト - 草 - 夕 9 (

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Part 3

Transition rules and runs of ASMs

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland.

#### **Transition rules**

Skip Rule:

skip

Meaning: Do nothing

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

Update Rule:

 $f(s_1,\ldots,s_n):=t$ 

Meaning: Update the value of f at  $(s_1, \ldots, s_n)$  to t.

Block Rule:

P par Q

Meaning: P and Q are executed in parallel.

Conditional Rule:

if  $\varphi$  then P else Q

Meaning: If  $\varphi$  is true, then execute P, otherwise execute Q.

Let Rule:

 $\mathbf{let}\ x = t\ \mathbf{in}\ P$ 

Meaning: Assign the value of t to x and then execute P.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### **Transition rules (continued)**

Forall Rule:

forall x with  $\varphi$  do P

Meaning: Execute P in parallel for each x satisfying  $\varphi.$ 

Choose Rule:

 $\mathbf{choose}\;x\;\mathbf{with}\;\varphi\;\mathbf{do}\;P$ 

Meaning: Choose an x satisfying  $\varphi$  and then execute P.

Sequence Rule:

P seq Q

Meaning: P and Q are executed sequentially, first P and then Q.

Call Rule:

 $r(t_1,\ldots,t_n)$ 

Meaning: Call transition rule r with parameters  $t_1, \ldots, t_n$ .

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland.

ㅁㅏ ◀@ㅏ ◀ㅌㅏ ◀ㅌㅏ \_ ㅌ \_ 쒸٩

#### Variations of the syntax

if $arphi$ then	if $\varphi$ then $P$ else $Q$
P	
else	
Q	
endif	
[do in-parallel]	$P_1$ par par $P_n$
$P_1$	
:	
$P_n$	
[enddo]	
$\{P_1,\ldots,P_n\}$	$P_1$ par par $P_n$

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Variations of the syntax (continued)

P	forall $x$ with $\varphi$ do $P$
enddo	
$\begin{array}{c} \textbf{choose} \ x : \varphi \\ P \end{array}$	
endchoose	
step P	P seq $Q$
step	
Q	

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland.

#### Example

**Example 3.18.** Sorting of linear data structures in-place,

one-swap-a-time.

Let a : Index  $\rightarrow$  Value

choose 
$$x, y \in Index : x < y \land a(x) > a(y)$$
  
do  $in - parallel$   
 $a(x) := a(y)$   
 $a(y) := a(x)$ 

#### Two kinds of non-determinisms:

"Don't-care" non-determinism: random choice

choose 
$$x \in \{x_1, x_2, ..., x_n\}$$
 with  $\varphi(x)$  do  $R(x)$ 

"Don't-know" indeterminism

Extern controlled actions and events (e.g. input actions)

monitored  $f: X \rightarrow Y$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Free and bound variables

**Definition.** An occurrence of a variable x is *free* in a transition rule, if it is not in the scope of a **let** x, **forall** x or **choose** x.

$$\mathbf{let}\ x = t \underbrace{\mathbf{in}\ P}_{\mathrm{scope}\ \mathrm{of}\ x}$$

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland.

ASM-Specifications

Rule declarations

**Definition.** A rule declaration for a rule name r of arity n is an expression

$$r(x_1,\ldots,x_n)=P$$

where

- P is a transition rule and
- the free variables of P are contained in the list  $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ .

Remark: Recursive rule declarations are allowed.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### **Abstract State Machines**

**Definition.** An abstract state machine M consists of

- $\blacksquare$  a signature  $\Sigma$ ,
- $\blacksquare$  a set of initial states for  $\Sigma$ ,
- a set of rule declarations,
- a distinguished rule name of arity zero called the main rule name of the machine.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland.



#### Semantics of transition rules

The semantics of transition rules is defined in a calculus by rules:

$$\frac{\textit{Premise}_1 \cdots \textit{Premise}_n}{\textit{Conclusion}}$$
 Condition

The predicate

$$\mathsf{yields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,\,U)$$

means:

The transition rule P yields the update set U in state  $\mathfrak A$  under the variable assignment  $\zeta$ .

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Semantics of transition rules (continued)

 $yields(\mathbf{skip}, \mathfrak{A}, \zeta, \emptyset)$ where  $l = (f, ([s_1]_{\zeta}^{\mathfrak{A}}, \dots, [s_n]_{\zeta}^{\mathfrak{A}}))$  $\overline{\mathsf{yields}(f(s_1,\ldots,s_n) := t, \mathfrak{A}, \zeta, \{(l,v)\})}$  $\mathsf{yields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,U) \quad \mathsf{yields}(Q,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,V)$ yields(P par  $Q, \mathfrak{A}, \zeta, U \cup V$ )  $\mathsf{yields}(P, \mathfrak{A}, \zeta, U)$ if  $[\varphi]^{\mathfrak{A}}_{\zeta} = true$ yields(if  $\varphi$  then P else  $Q, \mathfrak{A}, \zeta, U$ )  $\mathsf{yields}(Q, \mathfrak{A}, \zeta, V)$ if  $[\varphi]^{\mathfrak{A}}_{\zeta} = false$ yields(if  $\varphi$  then P else  $Q, \mathfrak{A}, \zeta, V$ )  $\mathsf{yields}(P, \mathfrak{A}, \zeta[x \mapsto a], U)$ where  $a = [t]^{\mathfrak{A}}$  $\overline{\text{yields}(\textbf{let } x = t \textbf{ in } P, \mathfrak{A}, \zeta, U)}$  $\frac{\mathrm{yields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta[x\mapsto a],\,U_a)}{\mathrm{yields}(\mathbf{forall}\;x\;\mathbf{with}\;\varphi\;\mathbf{do}\;P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,\bigcup_{a\in I}U_a)}\;\;\mathrm{where}\;I=range(x,\varphi,\mathfrak{A},\zeta)$ 

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland.

#### Semantics of transition rules (continued)

$$\begin{array}{ll} \begin{tabular}{ll} y \mbox{ields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta[x\mapsto a],U) \\ y \mbox{ields}(\mbox{choose }x \mbox{ with }\varphi \mbox{ do }P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,U) & \mbox{if }a\in range(x,\varphi,\mathfrak{A},\zeta) \\ \hline y \mbox{ields}(\mbox{choose }x \mbox{ with }\varphi \mbox{ do }P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,\emptyset) & \mbox{if } range(x,\varphi,\mathfrak{A},\zeta)=\emptyset \\ \hline y \mbox{ields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,U) & \mbox{yields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,U) & \mbox{if }U \mbox{ is consistent} \\ \hline y \mbox{ields}(P,\mathfrak{Seq}\ Q,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,U) & \mbox{if }U \mbox{ is inconsistent} \\ \hline y \mbox{ields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,U) & \mbox{yields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,U) & \mbox{where } r(x_1,\dots,x_n)=P \mbox{ is a rule declaration of }M \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$\operatorname{range}(x,\varphi,\mathfrak{A},\zeta)=\{a\in |\mathfrak{A}|: \llbracket\varphi\rrbracket^{\mathfrak{A}}_{\zeta[x\mapsto a]}=\operatorname{true}\}$$

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Coincidence, Substitution, Isomorphisms

**Lemma (Coincidence).** If  $\zeta(x)=\eta(x)$  for all free variables x of a transition rule P and P yields U in  $\mathfrak A$  under  $\zeta$ , then P yields U in  $\mathfrak A$  under  $\eta$ .

**Lemma (Substitution).** Let t be a static term and  $a = \llbracket t \rrbracket_{\zeta}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ . Then the rule  $P\frac{t}{x}$  yields the update set U in state  $\mathfrak{A}$  under  $\zeta$  iff P yields U in  $\mathfrak{A}$  under  $\zeta[x \mapsto a]$ .

**Lemma (Isomorphism).** If  $\alpha$  is an isomorphism from  $\mathfrak A$  to  $\mathfrak B$  and P yields U in  $\mathfrak A$  under  $\zeta$ , then P yields  $\alpha(U)$  in  $\mathfrak B$  under  $\alpha\circ\zeta$ .

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland



ASM-Specifications

#### Move of an ASM

**Definition.** A machine M can make a *move* from state  $\mathfrak{A}$  to  $\mathfrak{B}$  (written  $\mathfrak{A} \stackrel{M}{\Longrightarrow} \mathfrak{B}$ ), if the main rule of M yields a consistent update set U in state  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B} = \mathfrak{A} + U$ .

- $\blacksquare$  The updates in U are called *internal updates*.
- 𝔭 is called the *next internal state*.

If  $\alpha$  is an isomorphism from  $\mathfrak{A}$  to  $\mathfrak{A}'$ , the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathfrak{A} & \stackrel{M}{\Longrightarrow} & \mathfrak{B} \\ \alpha & \downarrow & \downarrow & \alpha \\ \mathfrak{A}' & \stackrel{M}{\Longrightarrow} & \mathfrak{B}' \end{array}$$

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerlan

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Run of an ASM

Let M be an ASM with signature  $\Sigma$ .

A  $\mathit{run}$  of M is a finite or infinite sequence  $\mathfrak{A}_0,\mathfrak{A}_1,\ldots$  of states for  $\varSigma$  such that

- $lacksquare \mathfrak{A}_0$  is an initial state of M
- $\blacksquare$  for each n,
- -either M can make a move from  $\mathfrak{A}_n$  into the next internal state  $\mathfrak{A}'_n$  and the environment produces a consistent set of external or shared updates U such that  $\mathfrak{A}_{n+1} = \mathfrak{A}'_n + U$ ,
- or M cannot make a move in state  $\mathfrak{A}_n$  and  $\mathfrak{A}_n$  is the last state in the run.
- In internal runs, the environment makes no moves.
- In *interactive* runs, the environment produces updates.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

4A 4 3 4 3 4 3 4 3 4 9 9 9

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Example

**Example 3.19.** Minimal spanning tree:: **Prim's algorithm** 

Two separated phases: initial, run

```
Signature: Weighted graph (connected, without loops) given by sets NODE, EDGE, ... functions weight: EDGE \rightarrow REAL, frontier: EDGE \rightarrow Bool, tree: EDGE \rightarrow Bool if mode = initial then choose p: NODE Selected(p):= true forall e: EDGE: p \in endpoints(e) frontier(e):= true mode:= run
```

□ → 4 周 → 4 E → 4 B → 9 Q Q

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

101

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Example: Prim's algorithm (Cont.)

```
 \begin{array}{ll} \textit{if} & \textit{mode} = \textit{run} \;\; \textit{then} \\ & \textit{choose} \;\; e : \textit{EDGE} : \textit{frontier}(e) \land \\ & ((\forall f \in \textit{EDGE}) : \;\; \textit{frontier}(f) \Rightarrow \;\; \textit{weight}(f) \geq \textit{weight}(e)) \\ & \textit{tree}(e) := \textit{true} \\ & \textit{choose} \;\; p : \;\; \textit{NODE} : \textit{p} \in \textit{endpoints}(e) \land \neg \textit{Selected}(\textit{p}) \\ & \textit{Selected}(\textit{p}) := \textit{true} \\ & \textit{forall} \;\; f : \textit{EDGE} : \textit{p} \in \textit{endpoints}(f) \\ & \textit{frontier}(f) := \neg \textit{frontier}(f) \\ & \textit{ifnone} \;\; \textit{mode} := \textit{done} \\ \end{array}
```

How can we prove the correctness, termination?

**Exercise 3.20.** Construct an ASM-Machine that implements Kruskal's algorithm.



The reserve of ASMs

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerla

. . . . . . . . . . . . . . .

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Importing new elements from the reserve

Import rule:

import x do P

Meaning: Choose an element  $\boldsymbol{x}$  from the reserve, delete it from the reserve and execute P.

**let** x = new(X) **in** P abbreviates

 $\begin{array}{c|c}
\mathbf{import} & x & \mathbf{do} \\
X(x) := tr
\end{array}$ 

X(x) := true P

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

#### The reserve of a state

- New dynamic relation Reserve.
- $\blacksquare Reserve$  is updated by the system, not by rules.
- $\blacksquare Res(\mathfrak{A}) = \{ a \in |\mathfrak{A}| : Reserve^{\mathfrak{A}}(a) = true \}$
- The reserve elements of a state are not allowed to be in the domain and range of any basic function of the state.

**Definition.** A state  $\mathfrak A$  satisfies the *reserve condition* with respect to an environment  $\zeta$ , if the following two conditions hold for each element  $a \in Res(\mathfrak A) \setminus ran(\zeta)$ :

- The element a is not the content of a location of  $\mathfrak{A}$ .
- If a is an element of a location l of  $\mathfrak A$  which is not a location for Reserve, then the content of l in  $\mathfrak A$  is undef.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

・ < 部 > < を > くを > を を を で の \*\*

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

105

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

Semantics of ASMs with a reserve

## $\begin{array}{ll} \mbox{yields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta[x\mapsto a],U) & \mbox{if } a\in Res(\mathfrak{A})\setminus ran(\zeta) \mbox{ and } \\ \mbox{yields}(\mbox{import } x\mbox{ do } P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,V) & \mbox{if } a\in Res(\mathfrak{A})\setminus ran(\zeta) \mbox{ and } \\ \mbox{V} = U \cup \{((Reserve,a),false)\} \\ \mbox{yields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,U) & \mbox{yields}(Q,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,V) \\ \mbox{yields}(P\mbox{ par } Q,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,U\cup V) & \mbox{if } Res(\mathfrak{A})\cap El(U)\cap El(V)\subseteq ran(\zeta) \\ \mbox{yields}(P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta[x\mapsto a],U_a) & \mbox{for each } a\in I \\ \mbox{yields}(\mbox{for all } x\mbox{ with } \varphi\mbox{ do } P,\mathfrak{A},\zeta,\bigcup_{a\in I}U_a) & \mbox{Res}(\mathfrak{A})\cap El(U_a)\cap El(U_b)\subseteq ran(\zeta) \\ \end{array}$

- ullet El(U) is the set of elements that occur in the updates of U.
- lacktriangle The elements of an update (l,v) are the value v and the elements of the location l.

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

#### Problem

Problem 1: New elements that are imported in parallel must be different.

```
import x do parent(x) = root import y do parent(y) = root
```

Problem 2: Hiding of bound variables.

```
\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{import} \ x \ \mathbf{do} \\ & f(x) := 0 \\ & \mathbf{let} \ x = 1 \ \mathbf{in} \\ & \mathbf{import} \ y \ \mathbf{do} \ f(y) := x \end{aligned}
```

**Syntactic constraint.** In the scope of a bound variable the same variable should not be used again as a bound variable (**let**, **forall**, **choose**, **import**).

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

ASM-Specifications

#### Preservation of the reserve condition

Lemma (Preservation of the reserve condition).

If a state  ${\mathfrak A}$  satisfies the reserve condition wrt.  $\zeta$  and P yields a consistent update set U in  ${\mathfrak A}$  under  $\zeta$ , then

- the sequel  $\mathfrak{A} + U$  satisfies the reserve condition wrt.  $\zeta$ ,
- $Res(\mathfrak{A} + U) \setminus ran(\zeta)$  is contained in  $Res(\mathfrak{A}) \setminus El(U)$ .

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

#### Permutation of the reserve

**Lemma (Permutation of the reserve).** Let  $\mathfrak A$  be a state that satisfies the reserve condition wrt.  $\zeta$ . If  $\alpha$  is a function from  $|\mathfrak A|$  to  $|\mathfrak A|$  that permutes the elements in  $Res(\mathfrak A)\setminus ran(\zeta)$  and is the identity on non-reserve elements of  $\mathfrak A$  and on elements in the range of  $\zeta$ , then  $\alpha$  is an isomorphism from  $\mathfrak A$  to  $\mathfrak A$ .

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

→ 4回 → 4 直 → 4 直 → 9 回

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

109

Abstract State Machines: ASM- Specification's method

#### Independence of the choice of reserve elements

#### Lemma (Independence).

Let P be a rule of an ASM without **choose**. If

- $\blacksquare \mathfrak{A}$  satisfies the reserve condition wrt.  $\zeta$ ,
- the bound variables of P are not in the domain of  $\zeta$ ,
- $\blacksquare P$  yields U in  $\mathfrak A$  under  $\zeta$ ,
- $\blacksquare P$  yields U' in  $\mathfrak A$  under  $\zeta$ ,

then there exists a permutation  $\alpha$  of  $Res({\mathfrak A})\setminus ran(\zeta)$  such that  $\alpha(U)=U'.$ 

Copyright © 2002 Robert F. Stärk, Computer Science Department, ETH Zürich, Switzerland

#### ◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆□▶ □ りゅう

#### Example: Abstract Data Types (ADT)

Example 3.21. Double-linked lists

See ASM-Buch.

**Exercise 3.22.** Give an ASM-Specification for the data structure bounded stack

#### 

#### Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time

#### Distributed ASM (DASM)

- ► Computation model:
  - Asynchronous computations
  - Autonomous operating agents
- ► A finite set of autonomous ASM-agents, each with a program of his own
- Agents interact through reading and writing common locations of global machine states.
- ▶ Potential conflicts are solved through the underlying semantic model, according to the definition of (partial-ordered) runs.

#### Foundations: Orders, CPO's, Proof techniques

#### Properties of binary relations

- ► X set
- $ho \subset X \times X$  binary relation
- Properties

Fundamentals: Orders, CPO's, proof techniques

(P1) 
$$x \rho x$$
 (reflexive)

(P2) 
$$(x \rho y \wedge y \rho x) \rightarrow x = y$$
 (antisymmetric)

(P3) 
$$(x \rho y \wedge y \rho z) \rightarrow x \rho z$$
 (transitive)

(P4) 
$$(x \rho y \vee y \rho x)$$
 (linear

#### (linear)

#### Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time Refinemen Fundamentals: Orders, CPO's, proof techniques

#### Quasi-Orders

- $\triangleright \le X \times X$  Quasi-order iff  $\le$  reflexive and transitive.
- Kernel:

$$\approx = \lesssim \cap \lesssim^{-1}$$

- ► Strict part: <=≲\≈
- ▶  $Y \subseteq X$  left-closed (in respect of  $\lesssim$ ) iff

$$(\forall y \in Y : (\forall x \in X : x \lesssim y \to x \in Y))$$

Notation: Quasi-order  $(X, \leq)$ 

#### Partial-Orders

- $\blacktriangleright \leq \subseteq X \times X$  partial-order iff  $\leq$  reflexive, antisymmetric and transitive.
- ► Core: Following holds

$$\operatorname{id}_X = \leq \cap \leq^{-1}$$

- ▶ Strict part:  $\langle = \langle \mid id_X \rangle$
- Often: < Partial-order iff < irreflexive, transitive.</li>
- ▶ Notation: Partial-order  $(X, \leq)$

	←□→ ←□→ ←□→ ←□→	<b>車 り</b> 900
Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques		115
Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time		Refinement O
Fundamentals: Orders, CPO's, proof techniques		_

#### Well-founded Orderings

▶ Partial-order  $\leq \subseteq X \times X$  well-founded iff

$$(\forall Y \subseteq X : Y \neq \emptyset \rightarrow (\exists y \in Y : y \text{ minimal in } Y \text{ in respect of } \leq))$$

- ▶ Quasi-order ≤ well-founded iff strict part of ≤ is well-founded.
- ▶ Initial segment:  $Y \subseteq X$ , left-closed
- ▶ Initial section of x:  $sec(x) = \{y : y < x\}$

#### Supremum

- ▶ Let  $(X, \leq)$  be a partial-order and  $Y \subseteq X$
- ▶  $S \subseteq X$  is a chain iff elements of S are linearly ordered through  $\leq$ .
- y is an upper bound of Y iff

$$\forall y' \in Y : y' \leq y$$

► Supremum: *y* is a supremum of *Y* iff

$$\forall y' \in X : ((y' \text{ upper bound of } Y) \rightarrow y \leq y')$$

► Analog: lower bound, Infimum inf(Y)

117

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Refinement O

**CPO** 

- ▶ A Partial-order  $(D, \sqsubseteq)$  is a complete partial ordering (CPO) iff
  - ▶  $\exists$  the smallest element  $\bot$  of D (with respect of  $\sqsubseteq$ )
  - $\blacktriangleright$  Each chain S has a supremum  $\sup(S)$ .

#### Example

#### Example 4.1.

- $\blacktriangleright$   $(\mathcal{P}(X),\subseteq)$  is CPO.
- ▶  $(D, \sqsubseteq)$  is CPO with
  - ▶  $D = X \nrightarrow Y$ : set of all the partial functions f with  $dom(f) \subseteq X$  and  $cod(f) \subseteq Y$ .
  - ▶ Let  $f, g \in X \nrightarrow Y$ .

$$f \sqsubseteq g \text{ iff } dom(f) \subseteq dom(g) \land (\forall x \in dom(f) : f(x) = g(x))$$



#### Monotonous, continuous

- ▶  $(D, \sqsubseteq)$ ,  $(E, \sqsubseteq')$  CPOs
- $ightharpoonup f: D \rightarrow E$  monotonous iff

$$(\forall d, d' \in D : d \sqsubseteq d' \rightarrow f(d) \sqsubseteq' f(d'))$$

ightharpoonup f: D 
ightharpoonup E continuous iff f monotonous and

$$(\forall S \subseteq D : S \text{ chain } \rightarrow f(\sup(S)) = \sup(f(S)))$$

 $X \subseteq D$  is admissible iff

$$(\forall S \subseteq X : S \text{ chain } \rightarrow \sup(S) \in X)$$

#### **Fixpoint**

▶  $(D, \sqsubseteq)$  CPO,  $f: D \rightarrow D$ 

▶  $d \in D$  fixpoint of f iff

$$f(d) = d$$

▶  $d \in D$  smallest fixpoint of f iff d fixpoint of f and

$$(\forall d' \in D : d' \text{ fixpoint } \rightarrow d \sqsubseteq d')$$

### Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques 121 Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time Refinement

#### Fixpoint-Theorem

Fundamentals: Orders, CPO's, proof techniques

**Theorem 4.2** (Fixpoint-Theorem:).  $(D, \sqsubseteq)$  *CPO*,  $f: D \to D$  continuous, then f has a smallest fixpoint  $\mu f$  and

$$\mu f = \sup\{f^i(\bot) : i \in \mathbb{N}\}$$

Proof: (Sketch)

$$\begin{aligned} \sup \{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\} & \text{ fixpoint:} \\ & f(\sup \{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\}) &= \sup \{f^{i+1}(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\} \\ & \text{ (continuous)} \\ &= \sup \{\sup \{f^{i+1}(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\}, \bot\} \\ &= \sup \{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\} \end{aligned}$$

#### Fixpoint-Theorem (Cont.)

Fixpoint-Theorem:  $(D, \sqsubseteq)$  CPO,  $f: D \to D$  continuous, then f has a smallest fixpoint  $\mu f$  and

$$\mu f = \sup\{f^i(\bot) : i \in \mathbb{N}\}$$

Proof: (Continuation)

- ▶  $\sup\{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\}$  smallest fixpoint:
  - 1. d' fixpoint of f
  - 2. ⊥⊑ *d*′
  - 3. f monotonous, d' FP:  $f(\bot) \sqsubseteq f(d') = d'$
  - 4. Induction:  $\forall i \in \mathbb{N} : f^i(\bot) \sqsubseteq \overline{f^i(d')} = d'$
  - 5.  $\sup\{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\} \sqsubseteq d'$

	←□ → ←② → ←② → ←② →	<b>∄</b>
Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques		123
Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time		Refinement O
Induction		

#### Induction over $\mathbb{N}$

#### Induction's principle:

$$(\forall X \subseteq \mathbb{N} : ((0 \in X \land (\forall x \in X : x \in X \rightarrow x + 1 \in X))) \rightarrow X = \mathbb{N})$$

#### Correctness:

- 1. Let's assume no, so  $\exists X \subseteq \mathbb{N} : \mathbb{N} \setminus X \neq \emptyset$
- 2. Let y be minimum in  $\mathbb{N} \setminus X$  (with respect to <).
- 3.  $y \neq 0$
- **4**.  $y 1 \in X \land y \notin X$
- 5. Contradiction

#### Induction over $\mathbb{N}$ (Alternative)

#### Induction's principle:

$$(\forall X \subseteq \mathbb{N} : (\forall x \in \mathbb{N} : \sec(x) \subseteq X \to x \in X) \to X = \mathbb{N})$$

#### Correctness:

- 1. Let's assume no, so  $\exists X \subseteq \mathbb{N} : \mathbb{N} \setminus X \neq \emptyset$
- 2. Let y be minimum in  $\mathbb{N} \setminus X$  (with respect to <).
- 3.  $sec(y) \subseteq X, y \notin X$
- 4. Contradiction

#### 40.40.45.45. 5 000

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

12

Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time

0

Induction

#### Well-founded induction

Induction's principle: Let  $(Z, \leq)$  be a well-founded partial order.

$$(\forall X \subseteq Z : (\forall x \in Z : \sec(x) \subseteq X \rightarrow x \in X) \rightarrow X = Z)$$

#### Correctness:

- 1. Let's assume no, so  $Z \setminus X \neq \emptyset$
- 2. Let z be minimum in  $Z \setminus X$  (in respect of  $\leq$ ).
- 3.  $\sec(z) \subseteq X, z \notin X$
- 4. Contradiction

#### FP-Induction: Proving properties of fixpoints

Induction's principle: Let  $(D, \sqsubseteq)$  CPO,  $f: D \to D$  continuous.

$$(\forall X \subseteq D \text{ admissible} : (\bot \in X \land (\forall y : y \in X \rightarrow f(y) \in X)) \rightarrow \mu f \in X)$$

Correctness: Let  $X \subseteq D$  admissible.

$$\begin{array}{lll} \mu f \in X & \Leftrightarrow & \sup\{f^i(\bot): i \in \mathbb{N}\} \in X & \text{(FP-theorem)} \\ & \Leftarrow & \forall i \in \mathbb{N}: f^i(\bot) \in X & \text{($X$ admissible)} \\ & \Leftarrow & \bot \in X \land (\forall n \in \mathbb{N}: f^n(\bot) \in X \rightarrow f(f^n(\bot)) \in X) \\ & & \text{(Induction $\mathbb{N}$)} \\ & \Leftarrow & \bot \in X \land (\forall y \in X \rightarrow f(y) \in X) & \text{(Gen.)} \end{array}$$

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time

#### **Problem**

**Exercise 4.3.** Let  $(D, \sqsubseteq)$  CPO with

- $X = Y = \mathbb{N}$
- ▶  $D = X \rightarrow Y$ : set all partial functions f with  $dom(f) \subseteq X$  and  $cod(f) \subseteq Y$ .
- ▶ Let  $f, g \in X \nrightarrow Y$ .

$$f \sqsubseteq g \text{ iff } dom(f) \subseteq dom(g) \land (\forall x \in dom(f) : f(x) = g(x))$$

Consider

$$\begin{array}{cccc} F: & D & \to & \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \\ & & & g & \mapsto & \begin{cases} \{(0,1)\} & g = \emptyset \\ \{(x,x \cdot g(x-1)) : x-1 \in \text{dom}(g)\} \cup \{(0,1)\} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \end{array}$$

#### **Problem**

#### Prove:

- 1.  $\forall g \in D : F(g) \in D$ , i.e.  $F : D \rightarrow D$
- 2.  $F: D \rightarrow D$  continuous
- 3.  $\forall n \in \mathbb{N} : \mu F(n) = n!$

#### Note:

 $\blacktriangleright$   $\mu F$  can be understood as the semantics of a function's definition

function 
$$\operatorname{Fac}(n:\mathbb{N}_{\perp}):\mathbb{N}_{\perp}=_{\operatorname{def}}$$
 if  $n=0$  then  $1$  else  $n\cdot\operatorname{Fac}(n-1)$ 

► Keyword: 'derived functions' in ASM



#### **Problem**

**Exercise 4.4.** Prove: Let G = (V, E) be an infinite directed graph with

- ▶ G has finitely many roots (nodes without incoming edges).
- ► Each node has finite out-degree.
- ► Each node is reachable from a root.

There exists an infinite path that begins on a root.

#### Distributed ASM

**Definition 4.5.** A DASM A over a signature (vocabulary)  $\Sigma$  is given through:

- ▶ A distributed programm  $\Pi_A$  over  $\Sigma$ .
- ▶ A non-empty set  $I_A$  of initial states An initial state defines a possible interpretation of  $\Sigma$  over a potential infinite base set X.

A contains in the signature a dynamic relation's symbol AGENT, that is interpreted as a finite set of autonomous operating agents.

- ▶ The behaviour of an agent a in state S of A is defined through program<sub>S</sub>(a).
- ► An agent can be ended through the definition of program<sub>5</sub>(a) := undef (representation of an invalid programm).

◆□▶ ◆圖▶ ◆園▶	<u>-₹</u> *)q(°
	131
	Refinement O

#### Partially ordered runs

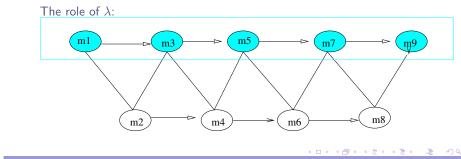
A run of a distributed ASM A is given through a triple  $\varrho \rightleftharpoons (M, \lambda, \sigma)$  with the following properties:

- 1. *M* is a partial ordered set of "moves", in which each move has only a finite number of predecessors.
- 2.  $\lambda$  is a function on M, that assigns an agent to each move, so that the moves of a particular agent are always linearly ordered.
- 3.  $\sigma$  associates a state of A with each finite initial segment Y of M. Intended meaning::  $\sigma(Y)$  is the "result of the execution of all moves in Y".  $\sigma(Y)$  is an initial state when Y is empty.
- 4. The coherence condition is satisfied: If max is a set of maximal elements in a finite initial segment X of M and  $Y = X \setminus max$ , then for  $x \in max$ ::  $\lambda(x)$  is an agent in  $\sigma(Y)$  and we get  $\sigma(X)$  from  $\sigma(Y)$  by firing  $\{\lambda(x) : x \in max\}$  (their programs ) in  $\sigma(Y)$ .

#### Comment, example

The agents of A modell the concurrent control-threads in the execution of  $\Pi_{\Delta}$ .

A run can be seen as the common part of the history of the same computation from the point of view of multiple observers.

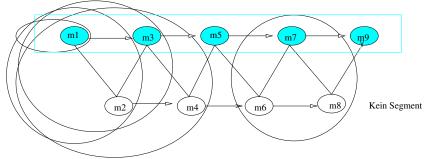


Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time 

#### Comment, example (cont.)

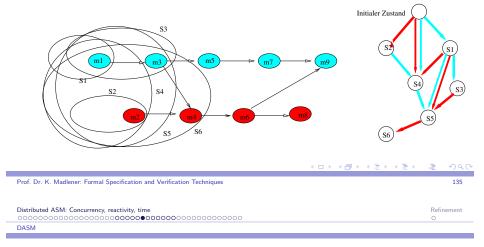
The role of  $\sigma$ : Snap-shots of the computation are the initial segments of the partial ordered set M. To each initial segment a state of A is assigned (interpretation of  $\Sigma$ ), that reflects the execution of the programs of the agents that appear in the segment.

→ "Result of the execution of all the moves" in the segment.



#### Coherence condition, example

If max is a set of maximal elements in a finite initial segment X of M and  $Y = X \setminus max$ , then for  $x \in max$ ::  $\lambda(x)$  is an agent in  $\sigma(Y)$  and we get  $\sigma(X)$  from  $\sigma(Y)$  by firing  $\{\lambda(x) : x \in max\}$  (their programs ) in  $\sigma(Y)$ .



#### Consequences of the coherence condition

**Lemma 4.6.** All the linearizations of an initial segment (i.e. respecting the partial ordering) of a run  $\rho$  lead to the same "final" state.

**Lemma 4.7.** A property P is valid in all the reachable states of a run  $\rho$ , iff it is valid in each of the reachable states of the linearizations of  $\rho$ .

#### Simple example

**Example 4.8.** Let {door, window} be propositional-logic constants in the signature with natural meaning:

door = true means "door open and analog for window.

The program has two agents, a door-manager d and a window-manager w with the following programs:

$$program_d = door := true // move x$$
  
 $program_w = window := true // move y$ 

In the initial state  $S_0$  let the door and window be closed, let d and w be in the agent set.

Which are the possible runs?



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

137

Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time

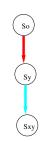
Refineme

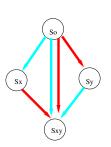
DASM

#### Simple example (Cont.)

Let 
$$\varrho_1 = ((\{x,y\}, x < y), id, \sigma), \varrho_2 = ((\{x,y\}, y < x), id, \sigma), \varrho_3 = ((\{x,y\}, <>), id, \sigma)$$
 (coarsest partial order)





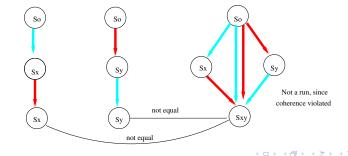


#### Variants of simple example

The program consists of two agents, a door-Manager d and a window-manager w with the following programs:

$$program_d = if \neg window \ then \ door := true \ // \ move \ x$$
  
 $program_w = if \neg door \ then \ window := true \ // \ move \ y$ 

In the initial state  $S_0$  let the door and window be closed, let d and w be in the agent set. How do the runs look like? Same  $\rho$ 's as before.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

139

Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time

Refineme O

More variations

**Exercise 4.9.** Consider the following pair of agents  $x, y \in \mathbb{N}$  (x = 2, y = 1 in the initial state)

1. 
$$a = x := x + 1$$
 and  $b = x := x + 1$ 

2. 
$$a = x := x + 1$$
 and  $b = x := x - 1$ 

3. 
$$a = x := y$$
 and  $b = y := x$ 

Which runs are possible with partial-ordered sets containing two elements?

Try to characterize all the runs.

#### More variations

DASM

Consider the following agents with the conventional interpretation:

```
    Program<sub>d</sub> = if ¬window then door := true //move x
    Program<sub>w</sub> = if ¬door then window := true //move y
    Program<sub>I</sub> = if ¬light ∧ (¬door ∨ ¬window) then //move z light := true door := false window := false
```

Which end states are possible, when in the initial state the three constants are false?



#### Further exercises

Consumer-producer problem: Assume a single producer agent and two or more consumer agents operating concurrently on a global shared structure. This data structure is linearly organized and the producer adds items at the one end side while the consumers can remove items at the opposite end of the data structure. For manipulating the data structure, assume operations *insert* and *remove* as introduced below.

```
insert: Item \times ItemList \rightarrow ItemList

remove: ItemList \rightarrow (Item \times ItemList)
```

- (1) Which kind of potential conflicts do you see?
- (2) How does the semantic model of partially ordered runs resolve such conflicts?

#### **Environment**

Reactive systems are characterized by their interaction with the environment. This can be modeled with the help of an environment-agent. The runs can then contain this agent (with  $\lambda$ ),  $\lambda$  must define in this case the update-set of the environment in the corresponding move.

The coherence condition must also be valid for such runs.

For externally controlled functions this surely doesn't lead to inconsistencies in the update-set, the behaviour of the internal agents can of course be influenced. Inconsistent update-sets can arise in shared functions when there's a simultaneous execution of moves by an internal agent and the environment agent.

Often certain assumptions or restrictions (suppositions) concerning the environment are done.

In this aspect there are a lot of possibilities: the environment will be only observed or the environment meets stipulated integrity conditions.

	2 10
	143
Refin	ement
0	
	Refin O

#### Time

The description of real-time behaviour must consider explicitly time aspects. This can be done successfully with help of timers (see SDL), global system time or local system time.

- ► The reactions can be instantaneous (the firing of the rules by the agents don't need time)
- Actions need time

Concerning the global time consideration, we assume, that there is on hand a linear ordered domain *TIME*, for instance with the following declarations:

domain 
$$(TIME, \leq), (TIME, \leq) \subset (\mathbb{R}, \leq)$$

In these cases the time will be measured with a discrete system watch: e.g.  $\,$ 

monitored now :→ TIME



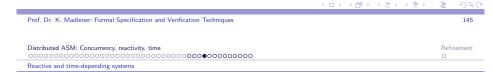
Reactive and time-depending systems

#### **Exercise 4.10.** Abstract modeling of a cash terminal:

Three agents are in the model: ct-manager, authentication-manager, account-manager. To withdraw an amount from an account, the following logical operations must be executed:

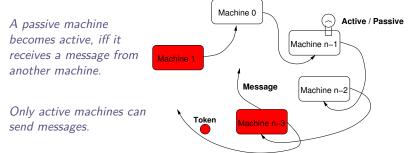
- 1. Input the card (number) and the PIN.
- 2. Check the validity of the card and the PIN (AU-manager).
- 3. Input the amount.
- 4. Check if the amount can be withdrawn from the account (ACC-manager).
- 5. If OK, update the account's stand and give out the amount.
- 6. If it is not OK, show the corresponding message.

Implement an asynchronous communication's model in which timeouts can cancel transactions.



#### Distributed Termination Detection

#### **Example 4.11.** Implement the following termination detection protocol:



Edsger W. Dijkstra, W. H. J. Feijen, and A.J.M. van Gasteren. Derivation of a Termination Detection Algorithm for Distributed Computations. IPL 16 (1983).

### Assumptions for distributed termination detection

#### Rules for a probe

- Rule 0 When active,  $Machine_{i+1}$  keeps the token; when passive, it hands over the token to  $Machine_i$ .
- Rule 1 A machine sending a message makes itself red.
- Rule 2 When  $Machine_{i+1}$  propagates the probe, it hands over a red token to  $Machine_i$  when it is red itself, whereas while being white it leaves the color of the token unchanged.
- Rule 3 After the completion of an unsuccessful probe, *Machine* <sub>0</sub> initiates a next probe.
- Rule 4  $Machine_0$  initiates a probe by making itself white and sending to  $Machine_{n-1}$  a white token.
- Rule 5 Upon transmission of the token to  $Machine_i$ ,  $Machine_{i+1}$  becomes white. (Notice that the original color of  $Machine_{i+1}$  may have affected the color of the token).

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

147

Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time concurrency, reactivity, time concurrency concur

### Distributed Termination Detection: Procedure

#### Signature:

#### static

```
 \begin{split} & \textit{COLOR} = \{\textit{red}, \textit{white}\} \quad \textit{TOKEN} = \{\textit{redToken}, \textit{whiteToken}\} \\ & \textit{MACHINE} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, n-1\} \\ & \textit{next} : \textit{MACHINE} \rightarrow \textit{MACHINE} \\ & \textit{e.g. with } \textit{next}(0) = \textit{n}-1, \textit{next}(\textit{n}-1) = \textit{n}-2, \dots, \textit{next}(1) = 0 \end{split}
```

#### controlled

 $color: MACHINE \rightarrow COLOR \quad token: MACHINE \rightarrow TOKEN \\ RedTokenEvent, WhiteTokenEvent: MACHINE \rightarrow BOOL$ 

**monitored**  $Active: MACHINE \rightarrow BOOL$   $SendMessageEvent: MACHINE \rightarrow BOOL$ 

#### Distributed Termination Detection: Procedure

Macros: (Rule definitions)

```
    ▶ ReactOnEvents(m: MACHINE) =
        if RedTokenEvent(m) then
            token(m) := redToken
            RedTokenEvent(m) := undef
        if WhiteTokenEvent(m) then
            token(m) := whiteToken
            WhiteTokenEvent(m) := undef
        if SendMessageEvent(m) then color(m) := red
            Rule 1
    ▶ Forward(m: MACHINE, t : TOKEN) =
        if t = whiteToken then
            WhiteTokenEvent(next(m)) := true
        else
```

RedTokenEvent(next(m)) := true

### Distributed Termination Detection: Procedure

#### **Programs**

► RegularMachineProgram =

```
ReactOnEvents(me)

if \neg Active(me) \land token(me) \neq undef then Rule 0

InitializeMachine(me) Rule 5

if color(me) = red then

Forward(me, redToken) Rule 2

else

Forward(me, token(me)) Rule 2

varphi

With InitializeMachine(m: MACHINE) = token(m) := undef color(m) := white
```

#### 

#### Distributed Termination Detection: Procedure

#### **Programs**

Reactive and time-depending systems

► SupervisorMachineProgram =

```
ReactOnEvents(me) \\ if \neg \ Active(me) \land \ token(me) \neq \ undef \ then \\ if \ \ color(me) = \ white \land \ token(me) = \ white Token \ then \\ ReportGlobalTermination \\ else \ \ Rule \ 3 \\ InitializeMachine(me) \ \ Rule \ 4 \\ Forward(me, white Token) \ \ Rule \ 4 \\ \end{cases}
```

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

151

Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time concurrency, reactivity, time concurrency concur

#### Distributed Termination Detection

#### Initial states

```
\exists m_0 \in MACHINE (program(m_0) = SupervisorMachineProgram \land token(m_0) = redToken \land (\forall m \in MACHINE)(m \neq m_0 \Rightarrow (program(m) = RegularMachineProgram \land token(m) = undef)))

Environment constraints For all the executions and all linearizations holds:

G (\forall m \in MACHINE)
```

```
 \begin{array}{l} \textbf{G} \ (\forall m \in \textit{MACHINE}) \\ \ (\textit{SendMessageEvent}(m) = \textit{true} \Rightarrow (\textbf{P}(\textit{Active}(m)) \ \land \textit{Active}(m))) \\ \ \land \ ((\textit{Active}(m) = \textit{true} \land \textbf{P}(\neg \textit{Active}(m)) \Rightarrow \\ \ (\exists m' \in \textit{MACHINE}) \ (m' \neq m \land \textit{SendMessageEvent}(m')))) \end{array}
```

#### **Nextconstraints**



Reactive and time-depending systems

#### Distributed Termination Detection

#### Correctness nach Dijkstra

Suppositions: The machines constitute a closed system, i.e. messages can only be dispatched among each other (no outside messages). The system in the initial state can have any color and several machines can be active. The token is located in the 0'th. machine. The given rules describe the transfer of the token and the coloration of the machines upon certain activities.

The task is to determine a state in which all the machines are passive (not active). This is a stable state of the system, because only active machines can dispatch messages and passive machines can only become active by receiving a message.

The invariant: Let t be the position on which the token is, then following invariant holds

 $(\forall i: t < i < n \; Machine_i \; \text{is passive}) \lor (\exists j: 0 \leq j \leq t \; Machine_j \; \text{is red}) \lor (\textit{Token is red})$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques 153

Distributed ASM: Concurrency, reactivity, time Refinement on the concurrency of the con

#### Distributed Termination Detection

 $(\forall i: t < i < n \; Machine_i \; \text{is passive}) \lor (\exists j: 0 \leq j \leq t \; Machine_j \; \text{is red}) \lor (\textit{Token is red})$ 

#### **Correctness argument**

When the token reaches  $Machine_o$ , t=0 and the invariant holds. If

 $(\mathit{Machine}_o \text{ is passive}) \land (\mathit{Machine}_o \text{ is white}) \land (\mathit{Token} \text{ is white})$  then

 $(\forall i : 0 < i < n \; Machine_i \text{ is passive}) \text{ must hold, i.e. termination.}$ 

**Proof of the invariant** Induction over t:

The case t = n - 1 is easy.

Assume the invariant is valid for 0 < t < n, prove it is valid for t - 1.

#### Distributed Termination Detection

Is the invariant valid in all the states of all the linearizations of the runs of the DASM ? No

- ▶ Problem 1 The red coloration of an active machine (that forwards a message) occurs in a later state. It should occur in the same state in which the message-receiving machine turns active. (Instantaneous message passing)
  - **Solution** color is a shared function. Instead of using SendMessageEvent(m) to set the color, it will be set by the environment: color(m) = red.
- ▶ Problem 2 There are states in which none of the machines has the token:: The machine that has the token, initializes itself and sets an event, that leads to a state in which none of the machines has the token.
  - **Solution** Instead of using FarbTokenEvent to reset, it is directly properly set: token(next(m)).
- ▶ Result More abstract machine. The environment controls the activity of the machines, message passing and coloration.

### Refinement's concepts for ASM's

Question: Is in the termination detection example the given DASM a refinement of the abstracter DASM?  $\leadsto$ 

#### General refinement concepts for ASM's

- ▶ Refinements are normally defined for BASM, i.e. the executions are linear ordered runs, this makes the definition of refinements easier.
- ▶ Refinements allow abstractions, realization of data and procedures.
- ► ASM refinements are usually problem-oriented: Depending on the application a flexible notion of refinement should be used.
- ▶ Proof tasks become structured and easier with help of correct and complete refinements.

See ASM-Buch. Example Shortest Path

# Algebraic Specification - Equational Logic

Specification techniques' requirements:

- Abstraction (refinement)
- ► Structuring mechanisms Partition-aggregation, combination, extension-instantiation
- ► Clear (explicit and plausible) semantics
- ► Support of the "verify while develop"-principle
- ► Expressiveness (all the partial recursive functions representable)
- Readability (adequacy) (suitability)

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

### Algebraic Specification - Algebras

#### Specification of data types

Syntax

#### Algebras

heterogeneous order-sorted homogeneous (Many-Sorted) (Many-Sorted) (Single-Sorted)

#### Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

# Single-Sorted Algebras

**Example 6.1.** a) Groups

SORT:: g

 $SIG:: \cdot : g, g \rightarrow g \qquad 1:\rightarrow g \qquad ^{-1}: g \rightarrow g$ 

 $x \cdot x^{-1} = 1$   $(x \cdot y) \cdot z = x \cdot (y \cdot z)$  $EQN:: x \cdot 1 = x$ 

All-quantified equations

Models are groups

Question: Which equations are valid in all groups.

i.e.  $EQN \models t_1 = t_2$ 

$$1 \cdot x = x$$
  $x^{-1} \cdot x = 1$   $(x^{-1})^{-1} = x$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

### Single-Sorted Algebras

Equality Logic: Replace "equals" with "equals"

Problem: cycles, non-termination

Solution: Directed equations → Term rewriting systems

Find R "convergent" with =  $\underset{EQN}{=} = \overset{*}{\underset{R}{\Longleftrightarrow}}$ 

$$\begin{array}{lll} x \cdot 1 \rightarrow x & 1 \cdot x \rightarrow x \\ x \cdot x^{-1} \rightarrow 1 & x^{-1} \cdot x \rightarrow 1 \\ 1^{-1} \rightarrow 1 & (x^{-1})^{-1} \rightarrow x \\ (x \cdot y)^{-1} \rightarrow y^{-1} \cdot x^{-1} & (x \cdot y) \cdot z \rightarrow x \cdot (y \cdot z) \\ x^{-1} \cdot (x \cdot y) \rightarrow y & x \cdot (x^{-1} \cdot y) \rightarrow y \end{array}$$

# Many-Sorted Algebras

#### b) Lists over nat-numbers

```
SIG: BOOL, NAT, LIST Sorts true, false: \rightarrow BOOL 0 \rightarrow NAT suc: NAT \rightarrow NAT +: NAT, NAT \rightarrow NAT eq: NAT, NAT \rightarrow BOOL nil: \rightarrow LIST .: NAT, LIST \rightarrow LIST app: LIST, LIST \rightarrow LIST rev: LIST \rightarrow LIST
```



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

161

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Algebrae

# Many-Sorted Algebras

Axiom are all-quantified equations, i.e.

$$\forall x_1,...,x_n,y_1,...,y_m: t_1(x_1,...,x_n)=t_2(y_1,...,y_m)$$
 where

 $t_1(x_1,...,x_n), t_2(y_1,...,y_m)$  Terms of the same sort in the signature.

EQN: 
$$n+0=n$$
  $n+\operatorname{suc}(m)=\operatorname{suc}(n+m)$ 

$$eq(0,0) = true \quad eq(0,suc(n)) = false$$
  
 $eq(suc(n),0) = false$ 

$$eq(suc(n), suc(m)) = eq(n, m)$$

$$app(nil, I) = I \quad app(n.l_1, l_2) = n. app(l_1, l_2)$$

$$rev(nil) = nil rev(n.l) = app(rev(l), n.nil)$$

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Algebrae

# Many-Sorted Algebras

Terms of type BOOL, NAT, LIST as identifiers for elements (standard definition!)

Which algebra is specified? How can we compute in this algebra?

Direct the equations  $\rightarrow$  term-rewriting system R. Evidently e.g.:

$$s^{i}(0) + s^{j}(0) \xrightarrow{R} s^{i+j}(0)$$

$$\mathsf{app}(3.1.\mathsf{nil}, \mathsf{app}(5.\mathsf{nil}, 1.2.3.\mathsf{nil})) \xrightarrow[R]{*} 3.1.5.1.2.3.\mathsf{nil}$$

rev(3.1.nil) 
$$\rightarrow$$
 app(rev(1.nil), 3.nil)  
 $\rightarrow$  app(app(rev(nil), 1.nil), 3.nil)  
 $\rightarrow$  app(app(nil, 1.nil), 3.nil)  
 $\rightarrow$  app(1.nil, 3.nil)  $\stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}$  1.3.nil

Question: Is app(x.y.nil, z.nil) =<sub>E</sub> app(x.nil, y.z.nil) true?

←□ → ←□ → ←□ → ←

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

16

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Algebra

#### Many-Sorted Algebras

Some equations are not valid in all the models of EQN= E. e.g.

$$x + y \neq_E y + x$$

$$app(x, app(y, z)) \neq_E app(app(x, y), z)$$

$$rev(rev(x)) \neq_E x$$

The pairs of terms cannot be joined.

#### Distinction:

- Equations that are valid in all the models of E.
- Equations that are valid in data models of *E*.

$$x + y = y + x :: s^{i}0 + s^{j}0 = s^{j}0 + s^{i}0$$
 all  $i, j$   
 $rev(rev(x)) = x$  for  $x \equiv s^{i_1}0.s^{i_2}0...s^{i_n}0.$ nil

# Thesis: Data types are Algebras

ADT: Abstract data types. Independent of the data representation.

Specification of abstract data types:

Concepts from Logic/universal Algebra

Objective: common language layer for specification and implementation.

Methods for proving the correctness:

Syntax, L formulae (P-Logic, Hoare, . . . )

CI: Consequence closure (e.g.  $\models$ , Th(A),...)



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

16

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Algebraic Fundamentals

### Consequence closure

 $CI: \mathbb{P}(L) \to \mathbb{P}(L)$  (subsets of L) with

- a)  $A \subset L \rightsquigarrow A \subset CI(A)$
- b)  $A, B \subset L, A \subseteq B \rightsquigarrow CI(A) \subseteq CI(B)$  (Monotony)
- c) CI(A) = CI(CI(A)) (Maximality)

Important concepts:

Consistency:  $A \subsetneq L$  A is consistent if  $CI(A) \subsetneq L$  Implementation: A implements B (Refinement)

$$L \subset L', CI(B) \subseteq CI(A)$$

Related to implication.

#### 

Signature - Term

### Signature - Terms

**Definition 6.2.** a) Signature is a triple sig =  $(S, F, \tau)$  (abbreviated:  $\Sigma$ )

- ► *S* finite set of sorts
- ► F set of operators (function symbols)
- ▶  $\tau: F \to S^+$  arity function, i.e.  $\tau(f) = s_1 \cdots s_n \ s, \ n \ge 0, \ s_i \ \text{argument's sorts, s target sort.}$

*Write:* 
$$f: s_1, \ldots, s_n \rightarrow s$$

(Notice that n = 0) is possible, constants of sort S.

#### 4 미 > 〈원 > 〈본 > 〈본 > 〈본 > 〉의

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Signature - Terms

### Signature - Terms

b) Term(F): Set of ground terms over sig and their tree presentation.

$$\operatorname{\mathsf{Term}}(F) := \bigcup_{s \in S} \operatorname{\mathsf{Term}}_s(F)$$

recursive def.

- ▶  $f : \rightarrow s$ , so  $f \in \text{Term}_s(F)$  representation:  $\cdot f$
- ▶  $f: s_1, ..., s_n \rightarrow s$ ,  $t_i \in \text{Term}_{s_i}(F)$  with Rep.  $T_i$  so  $f(t_1, ..., t_n) \in \text{Term}_s(F)$  with Rep.



Consider the representation by ordered trees

Signature - Terms

# Signature - Terms

c)  $V = \bigcup_{s=0}^{\infty} V_s$  system of variables  $V \cap F = \emptyset$ .

Each  $x \in V_s$  has functionality  $x : \rightarrow s$ 

Set:  $\operatorname{Term}(F, V) := \operatorname{Term}(F \cup V)$ .

**Quotation:** terms over sig in the variables V. (F and  $\tau$  suitable enhanced with the variables and their sorts).

Intention: for variables is allowed to use any object of the same sort, i.e. terms of this sort. "Identifier" for an arbitrary object of this sort.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

169

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Strictness - Positions- Subterms

#### Strictness - Positions- Subterms

**Definition 6.3.** a)  $s \in S$  strict, if  $Term_s(F) \neq \emptyset$ 

If there's for each sort  $s \in S$  a constant of sort S or a function  $f: s_1, \ldots, s_n \to s$ , so that the  $s_i$  are strict, then all the sorts of the signature are strict. $\leadsto$  strict signatures (general assumption)

b) Subterms (t) =  $\{t_p \mid p \text{ location (position) in } p, t_p \text{ subterm in } p\}$ The positions are represented through sequences over  $\mathbb{N}$  (elements of  $\mathbb{N}^*$ , e the empty succession).

O(t) Set of positions in t,

For  $p \in O(t)$   $t_p$  (or  $t|_p$ ) subterm of t in position p

- t constant or variable:  $O(t) = \{e\}$   $t_e \equiv t$
- ▶  $t \equiv f(t_1, ..., t_n)$  so  $O(t) = \{ip \mid 1 \le i \le n, p \in O(t_i)\} \cup \{e\}$  $t_{ip} \equiv t_i|_p$  and  $t_e \equiv t$ .

<□ > <□ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > < □ > <

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Strictness - Positions- Subterms

#### Term replacement

c) Term replacement:  $t, r \in \text{Term}(F, V)$ 

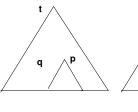
 $p \in O(t)$ : with  $r, t_p \in \text{Term}_s(F, V)$  for a sort s.

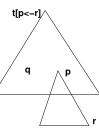
Then

 $t[r]_p$ ,  $t[p \leftarrow r]$  respectively  $t_p^r$  is the term, that is obtained from t through replacement of subterm  $t_p$  by r.

So  $t[p \leftarrow r]_q = t_q$  for  $q \mid p$  and

 $t[p \leftarrow r]_p = r$ 





Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Strictness - Positions- Subterm

#### Signatures - terms

Ground terms:

true, false,  $eq(0, suc(0)) \in Term_{BOOL}(S)$ 

 $0, \mathsf{suc}(0), \mathsf{suc}(0) + (\mathsf{suc}(\mathsf{suc}(0)) + 0) \in \mathsf{Term}_{\mathsf{NAT}}(S)$ 

 $app(nil, suc(0).(suc(suc(0)).nil) \in Term_{LIST}(S)$ 

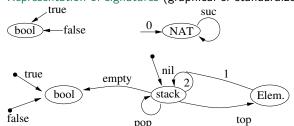
 $0. \operatorname{suc}(0), \operatorname{eq}(\operatorname{true}, \operatorname{false}), \operatorname{rev}(0)$  no terms.

General terms:

 $eq(x_1, x_2) \in \text{Term}_{\text{BOOLE}}(F, V), suc(x_1) + (x_2 + \text{suc}(0)) \in \text{Term}_{\text{NAT}}(F, V)$   $app(l_1, x_1.l_0) \in \text{Term}_{\text{LIST}}(F, V)$   $rev(x_1.l) \in \text{Term}_{\text{LIST}}(F, V)$  $app(x_1, l_2)$  no term.

# Signatures

Representation of signatures (graphical or standardized)



#### Notations:

sig . . .

sorts ...

ops . . . op:  $W \rightarrow S$ 

 $op_1, \ldots, op_i: W \to S$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus 

Interpretations: sig-algebras

### Interpretations: sig-Algebras

**Definition 6.5.** sig =  $(S, F, \tau)$  signature. A sig-Algebra  $\mathfrak A$  is composed of

- 1) Set of support  $A = \bigcup_{s \in S} A_s, A_s \neq \emptyset$  set of support of type s.
- 2) Function system  $F_{\mathfrak{A}} = \{f_{\mathfrak{A}} : f \in F\}$  with  $f_{\mathfrak{A}}: A_{\mathfrak{s}_1} \times \cdots \times A_{\mathfrak{s}_n} \to A_{\mathfrak{s}}$  function and  $\tau(f) = \mathfrak{s}_1 \cdots \mathfrak{s}_n \mathfrak{s}$ .

Notice: The  $f_{\mathfrak{N}}$  are total functions.

The precondition  $A_s \neq \emptyset$  is not mandatory.

#### Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Interpretations: sig-algebras

### Interpretations: sig-Algebras

**Example 6.6.** a)  $sig \equiv BOOL$ -algebras, true, false : $\rightarrow BOOL$  $true_{\mathfrak{A}_1}=0$  $\{0,1\}$  $false_{\mathfrak{A}_{1}}=1$  $\mathfrak{A}_2$  $\{0,1\}$  $true_{\mathfrak{A}_2}=0$  $false_{\mathfrak{N}_2} = 0$ bool-Alg.  $false_{\mathfrak{A}_2} = 5$  $true_{\mathfrak{A}_2}=4$  $\{true, false\}$   $true_{\mathfrak{A}_A} = true$   $false_{\mathfrak{A}_A} = false$ b)  $sig \equiv NAT$ , 0, suc{ true, false}  $\{0, suc^i(0)\}$ true  $suc_{\mathbb{N}}$   $pred_{\mathbb{Z}}$   $id_{\mathbb{N}}$  suc(true) = falsesuc(0) = suc(0) $SUC_{\mathfrak{A}_{i}}$ 

 $suc(false) = true \quad suc(suc^{i}(0)) = suc^{i+1}(0)$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Interpretations: sig-algebras

# Free sig-algebra generated by V

#### Definition 6.7.

 $\blacktriangleright \mathfrak{A} = (A, F_{\mathfrak{A}})$  with:  $A = \bigcup_{s \in S} A_s A_s = \operatorname{Term}_s(F, V)$ , i.e. A = Term(F, V) $F \ni f: s_1, \ldots, s_n \to s, f_{21}(t_1, \ldots, t_n) = f(t_1, \ldots, t_n)$ 

 $\mathfrak{A}$  is sig-Algebra::  $T_{\text{sig}}(V)$ the free termalgebra in the variables V generated by V

 $V = \varnothing : A_s = \text{Term}_s(F)$  set of ground terms  $(A_s \neq \emptyset, because sig is strict).$ 

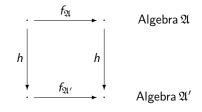
 $\mathfrak{A}$  Ground termalgebra::  $T_{\text{sig}}$ 

**Definition 6.8** (sig-homomorphism).  $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{A}'$  sig-algebras  $h: \mathfrak{A} \to \mathfrak{A}'$  family of functions

 $h = \{h_s : A_s \rightarrow A_s' : s \in S\}$  is sig-homomorphism when

$$h_s(f_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1,\ldots,a_n))=f_{\mathfrak{A}'}(h_{s_1}(a_1),\ldots,h_{s_n}(a_n))$$

As always: injective, surjective, bijective, isomorphism



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus 

Canonical homomorphisms

Canonical homomorphisms

**Lemma 6.9. ②** *sig-Algebra*, *T*<sub>sig</sub>

a) The family of the interpretation functions  $h_s: \operatorname{Term}_s(F) \to A_s$  defined through

$$h_s(f(t_1,\ldots,t_n)) = f_{\mathfrak{A}}(h_{s_1}(t_1),\ldots,h_{s_n}(t_n))$$

with  $h_s(c) = c_{\mathfrak{A}}$  is a sig-homomorphism.

b) There is no other sig-homomorphism from  $T_{sig}$  to  $\mathfrak{A}$ . Uniqueness!

Proof: Just try!!

4□ > 4問 > 4 = > 4 = > 9 Q ○

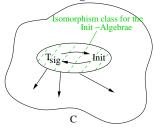
Canonical homomorphisms

# Initial algebras

**Definition 6.10** (Initial algebras). A sig-Algebra  $\mathfrak A$  is called initial in a class C of sig-algebras, if for each sig-Algebra  $\mathfrak{A}' \in C$  exists exactly one sig-homomorphism  $h: \mathfrak{A} \to \mathfrak{A}'$ .

Particularly:  $T_{sig}$  is initial in the class of all sig-algebras.

Fact: Initial algebras are isomorphic.



The final algebras can be defined analogously.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Canonical homomorphisms

# Canonical homomorphisms

 $\mathfrak A$  sig-Algebra,  $h: \mathcal T_{\mathsf{sig}} \to \mathfrak A$  interpretation homomorphism.

 $\mathfrak{A}$  sig-generated (term-generated) iff

 $\forall s \in S$   $h_s : \operatorname{Term}_s(F) \to A_s$  surjective

The (free) termalgebra is sig-generated.

ADT requirements:

- ► Representation's independent (isomorphism class)
- ► Operation's generated (sig-generated)

Thesis: An ADT is the isomorphism class of an initial algebra.

Termalgebras as initial algebras are ADT.

Notice by the properties of free termalgebras : functions from V in  $\mathfrak A$  can be extended to unique homomorphisms from  $T_{sig}(V)$  in  $\mathfrak{A}$ .

Equational specifications

### **Equational specifications**

For Specification's formalisms: Classes of algebras that include initial algebras.

→ Horn-Logic (See bibliography)

 $\begin{array}{ll} \text{sig INT} & \text{sorts int} \\ \text{ops} & 0: \rightarrow \text{int} \\ & \text{suc}: \text{int} \rightarrow \text{int} \\ & \text{pred}: \text{int} \rightarrow \text{int} \end{array}$ 



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

18

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Equational specifications

### Equational specifications

**Definition 6.11.** sig =  $(S, F, \tau)$  signature, V system of variables.

a) Equation:  $(u, v) \in \text{Term}_s(F, V) \times \text{Term}_s(F, V)$ 

Write: u = v

Equational system E over sig, V: Set of equations E

b) (Equational)-specification: spec = (sig, E)

where E is an equational system over  $F \cup V$ .

Equational specifications

#### **Notation**

#### Keyword eqns

spec INT

sorts int implicit

eqns  $\operatorname{suc}(\operatorname{pred}(x)) = x$  of the sorts  $\operatorname{pred}(\operatorname{suc}(x)) = x$  of the variables

#### Semantics::

- ▶ loose all models (PL1)
- tight (special model initial, final)
- operational (equational calculus + induction principle)

◆□▶ ◆□▶ ◆■▶ ◆■▶ ● 99(

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

400

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Equational specifications

# Models of spec = (sig, E)

**Definition 6.12.**  $\mathfrak{A}$  sig-Algebra, V(S)- system of variables

a) Assignment function  $\varphi$  for  $\mathfrak{A} \colon \varphi_s \colon V_s \to A_s$  induces a

*valuation*  $\varphi$  : Term $(F, V) \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$  *through* 

$$\varphi(f) = f_{\mathfrak{A}}, f \text{ constant}, \quad \varphi(x) := \varphi_s(x), x \in V_s$$
  
 $\varphi(f(t_1, \ldots, t_n)) = f_{\mathfrak{A}}(\varphi(t_1), \ldots, \varphi(t_n))$ 

$$V_s \stackrel{\varphi_s}{\longrightarrow} A_s$$
 $\mathsf{Term}_s(F,V) \stackrel{\varphi_s}{\longrightarrow} A_s$ 

 $\operatorname{\mathsf{Term}}(F,V) \stackrel{\varphi}{\longrightarrow} \mathfrak{A}$  homomorphism

(Proof!)

# Models of spec = (sig, E)

- b) s = t equation over sig. V  $\mathfrak{A} \models s = t$ :  $\mathfrak{A}$  satisfies s = t with assignment  $\varphi$  iff  $\varphi(s) = \varphi(t)$ , equality in A.
- c)  $\mathfrak{A}$  satisfies s = t or s = t holds in  $\mathfrak{A}$  $\mathfrak{A} \models s = t$ : for each assignment  $\varphi$  $\mathfrak{A} \models s = t$
- d)  $\mathfrak{A}$  is model of spec = (sig, E) iff  $\mathfrak A$  satisfies each equation of E $\mathfrak{A} \models E$  ALG(spec) class of the models of spec.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus 

Equational specifications

### **Examples**

#### **Example 6.13.** 1)

spec NAT  
sorts nat  
ops 
$$0:\rightarrow$$
 nat  
 $s:$  nat  $\rightarrow$  nat  
 $-+-:$  nat, nat  $\rightarrow$  nat  
eqns  $x+0=x$   
 $x+s(y)=s(x+y)$ 

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus 

#### Equational specifications

### Examples

#### sig-algebras

a) 
$$\mathfrak{A} = (\mathbb{N}, \hat{0}, \hat{+}, \hat{s})$$
  
 $\hat{0} = 0$   $\hat{s}(n) = n + 1$   $n + m = n + m$ 

b) 
$$\mathfrak{B} = (\mathbb{Z}, \hat{0}, \hat{+}, \hat{s})$$
  
 $\hat{0} = 1$   $\hat{s}(i) = i \cdot 5$   $i \hat{+} j = i \cdot j$ 

c) 
$$\mathfrak{C} = (\{\text{true}, \text{false}\}, \hat{0}, \hat{+}, \hat{s})$$
  
 $\hat{0} = \text{false} \quad \hat{s}(\text{true}) = \text{false} \quad \hat{s}(\text{false}) = \text{true}$   
 $i + \hat{j} = i \lor j$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Equational specifications

# **Examples**

 $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}, \mathfrak{C}$  are models of spec NAT

e.g. 
$$\mathfrak{B}: \varphi(x) = a \quad \varphi(y) = b \quad a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$$

$$\varphi(x+0) = a + \hat{0} = a \cdot 1 = a = \varphi(x)$$

$$\varphi(x+s(y)) = a + \hat{s}(b) = a \cdot (b \cdot 5)$$

$$= (a \cdot b) \cdot 5 = \hat{s}(a + b)$$

$$= \varphi(s(x+y))$$

Equational specifications

#### Examples

2)

```
spec LIST(NAT)
           NAT
sorts nat, list
         \mathsf{nil} : \to \mathsf{list}
ops
           \underline{\phantom{a}}.\underline{\phantom{a}}:\mathsf{nat},\mathsf{list}\to\mathsf{list}
           app: list, list \rightarrow list
eqns app(nil, q_2) = q_2
           app(x.q_1, q_2) = x. app(q_1, q_2)
```



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus 

Equational specifications

# **Examples**

spec-Algebra

$$\begin{array}{ll} \mathfrak{A} & \mathbb{N}, \mathbb{N}^* \\ \hat{0} = 0 & \hat{+} = + & \hat{\mathfrak{s}} = +1 \\ \hat{\mathsf{nil}} = e & (\mathsf{emptyword}) \\ \hat{:} & (i,z) = i \ z \\ \widehat{\mathsf{app}}(z_1, z_2) = z_1 z_2 \, (\mathsf{concatenation}) \end{array}$$

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Equational specifications

### Examples

3) spec INT 
$$\operatorname{suc}(\operatorname{pred}(x)) = x$$
  $\operatorname{pred}(\operatorname{suc}(x)) = x$ 

		1	2	3
_	$A_{int}$	$\mathbb{Z}$	N	{true, false}
	$0_{\mathfrak{A}_i}$	0	0	true
	$suc_{\mathfrak{A}_i}$	$suc_{\mathbb{Z}}$	$suc_{\mathbb{N}}$	$\left\{\begin{array}{l} true \to false \\ false \to true \end{array}\right\}$
	$pred_{\mathfrak{A}_i}$	$pred_{\mathbb{Z}}$	$\left\{\begin{array}{c} n+1 \to n \\ 0 \to 0 \end{array}\right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} true \to false \\ false \to true \end{array} \right\} \\ +$

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Equational specifications

# **Examples**

	4	5	6
$A_{int}$	$\{a,b\}^* \cup \mathbb{Z}$	$\{1\}^+ \cup \{0\}^+ \cup \{z\}$	!
$0_{\mathfrak{A}_i}$	0	Z	ļ
$suc_{\mathfrak{A}_i}$	$Suc_{\mathbb{Z}}$	$\left\{\begin{array}{l} 1^n \to 1^{n+1} \\ z \to 1 \\ 0^{n+1} \to 0^n \\ 0 \to z \end{array}\right\}$	id
$pred_{\mathfrak{A}_i}$	$pred_{\mathbb{Z}}$	$\left\{\begin{array}{l} 1^{n+1} \rightarrow 1^n \\ 1 \rightarrow z \\ z \rightarrow 0 \\ 0^n \rightarrow 0^{n+1} \end{array}\right\}$	id
	_	+	+

Incoherent semantics

#### Substitution

**Definition 6.14** (sig, Term(F, V)).  $\sigma$ ::  $\sigma_s$ :  $V_s \to \text{Term}_s(F, V)$ ,  $\sigma_s(x) \in \text{Term}_s(F, V)$ ,  $x \in V_s$   $\sigma(x) = x$  for almost every  $x \in V$ 

 $D(\sigma) = \{x \mid \sigma(x) \neq x\}$  finite:: domain of  $\sigma$ 

*Write*  $\sigma = \{x_1 \leftarrow t_1, \dots, x_n \leftarrow t_n\}$ 

Extension to homomorphism  $\sigma$ : Term $(F, V) \rightarrow$  Term(F, V)

$$\sigma(f(t_1,\ldots,t_n))=f(\sigma(t_1),\ldots,\sigma(t_n))$$

*Ground substitution:*  $t_i \in \text{Term}_S(F)$   $x_i \in D(\sigma)_S$ 

□▶→□▶→重▶→重→□

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Incoherent semantics

#### Lose semantics

**Definition 6.15.** spec = (sig, E)

 $ALG(spec) = \{\mathfrak{A} \mid sig-Algebra, \mathfrak{A} \models E\}$  sometimes alternatively

 $ALG_{TG}(spec) = \{\mathfrak{A} \mid term-generated sig-Algebra, \mathfrak{A} \models E\}$ 

Find: Characterizations of equations that are valid in ALG(spec) or  $ALG_{TG}(spec)$ .

- a) Semantical equality:  $E \models s = t$
- b) Operational equality:  $t_1 \vdash_F t_2$  iff

There is  $p \in O(t_1)$ ,  $s = t \in E$ , substitution  $\sigma$  with  $t_1|_p \equiv \sigma(s)$ ,  $t_2 \equiv t_1[\sigma(t)]_p(t_1[p \leftarrow \sigma(t)])$  or  $t_1|_p \equiv \sigma(t)$ ,  $t_2 \equiv t_1[\sigma(s)]_p$ 

 $t_1 =_E t_2$  iff  $t_1 \stackrel{*}{\vdash} t_2$ 

Formalization of replace equals  $\leftrightarrow$  equals

# Equality calculus

c) Equality calculus: Inference rules (deductive)

Reflexivity  $\overline{t=t}$ 

Symmetry  $\frac{t = t'}{t' = t}$ 

Transitivity  $\frac{t=t',t'=t''}{t=t''}$ 

Replacement  $\frac{t'=t''}{s[t']_p=s[t'']_p}$   $p\in O(s)$ 

(frequently also with substitution  $\sigma$ )

◆ロト ◆部ト ◆意ト ◆意ト ・ 意 ・ 夕久(

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Incoherent semantics

# Equality calculus

 $E \vdash s = t$  iff there is a proof P for s = t out of E, i.e.

P= sequence of equations that ends with s=t, such that for  $t_1=t_2\in P$ .

- i)  $t_1 = t_2 \in \sigma(E)$  for a Substitution  $\sigma$ :
- ii)  $t_1 = t_2 \dots$  out of precedent equations in P by application of one of the inference rules.

Incoherent semantics

# Properties and examples

Consequence 6.16 (Properties and Examples).

stable w.r. to substitutions

- a) If either  $E \models s = t$  or  $s =_E t$  or  $E \vdash s = t$  holds, then
  - i) If  $\sigma$  is a substitution, then also  $E \models \sigma(s) = \sigma(t) / \sigma(s) =_E \sigma(t) / E \models \sigma(s) = \sigma(t)$  i.e. the induced equivalence relations on Term(F, V) are
  - ii)  $r \in \text{Term}(F, V)$ ,  $p \in O(r)$ ,  $r|_p$ ,  $s, t \in \text{Term}_{s'}(F, V)$  then  $E \models r[s]_p = r[t]_p / r[s]_p =_E r[t]_p / E \vdash r[s]_p = r[t]_p$  replacement property (monotonicity)
  - $\rightsquigarrow$  Congruence on Term(F, V) which is stable.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Incoherent semantics

# Congruences / Quotient algebras

- b)  $\mathfrak{A} = (A, F_{\mathfrak{A}})$  sig-Algebra.  $\sim$  bin. relation on A is congruence relation over  $\mathfrak{A}$ , iff
  - i)  $a \sim b \rightsquigarrow \exists s \in S : a, b \in A_s$  (sort compatible)
  - ii)  $\sim$  is equivalence relation
  - iii)  $a_i \sim b_i \ (i=1,\ldots,n), \ f_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1,\ldots,a_n) \ \text{defined}$  $\leadsto f_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1,\ldots,a_n) \sim f_{\mathfrak{A}}(b_1,\ldots,b_n) \ (\text{monotonic})$

 $\mathfrak{A}/\sim$  quotient algebra:

 $A/\sim=\bigcup_{s\in S}(A_s/\sim)_s$  with  $(A_s/\sim)_s=\{[a]_\sim:a\in A_s\}$  and  $f_{\mathfrak{A}/\sim}$  with  $f_{\mathfrak{A}/\sim}([a_1],\ldots,[a_n])=[f_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1,\ldots,a_n)]$ 

well defined, i.e.  $\mathfrak{A}/\sim$  is sig-Algebra. Abbreviated  $\mathfrak{A}_{\sim}$ 

 $\varphi: \mathfrak{A} \to \mathfrak{A}_{\sim}$  with  $\varphi_s(a) = [a]_{\sim}$  is a surjective homomorphism, the canonical homomorphism.

c)  $\mathfrak{A},\mathfrak{A}'$  sig-algebras  $\varphi:\mathfrak{A}\to\mathfrak{A}'$  surjective homomorphism. Then

$$\mathfrak{A} \models s = t \leadsto \mathfrak{A}' \models s = t$$

d) spec = (sig, E):

$$s =_E t$$
 iff  $E \vdash s = t$ 

e)  $\mathfrak A$  sig-Algebra, R a sort compatible bin. relation over  $\mathfrak A$ . Then there is a smallest congruence  $\equiv_R$  over  $\mathfrak A$  that contains R, i.e.  $R\subseteq\equiv_R$ 

 $\equiv_R$  the congruence generated by R

Proofs: Don't give up...

#### ◆ロト ◆御 ト ◆ 恵 ト ◆ 恵 ・ 夕 Q (

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Connection between  $\models$ ,  $=_E$ ,  $\vdash_E$ 

# Connections between $\models$ , $=_F$ , $\vdash_F$

- f)  $\mathfrak{A}$  sig-Algebra, E equational system over (sig, V). E induces a relation  $\underset{E \mid \mathfrak{A}}{\sim}$  on  $\mathfrak{A}$  where
  - $a \underset{E,\mathfrak{A},s}{\sim} a' \ (a,a' \in A_s)$  iff there is  $t=t' \in E$  and an assignment
  - $\varphi: V \to \mathfrak{A}$  with  $\varphi(t) = a$ ,  $\varphi(t') = a'$

This relation is sort compatible.

Fact: Let  $\equiv$  be a congruence over  ${\mathfrak A}$  that contains  $\underset{{\cal E},{\mathfrak A}}{\sim},$  then  ${\mathfrak A}/\equiv$  is

- a spec = (sig, E)-Algebra, i.e. model of E.
- g) Existence:  $\mathfrak{A}=T_{\rm sig}$  the (ground) term algebra, then  $=_E$  is on  $T_{\rm sig}$  the smallest congruence that contains  $\sim_{E,\mathfrak{A}}$ .

In particular  $T_{\text{sig}}/=_E$  is a term-generated model of E.

# example

spec :: INT with 
$$pred(suc(x)) = x$$
,  $suc(pred(x)) = x$ 

$$(T_{\mathsf{INT}}/=_{\mathsf{E}})_{\mathsf{int}} = \begin{cases} [0] = \{0, \mathsf{pred}(\mathsf{suc}(0)), \mathsf{suc}(\mathsf{pred}(0)), \dots \\ [\mathsf{suc}(0)] = \{\mathsf{suc}(0), \mathsf{pred}(\mathsf{suc}(\mathsf{suc}(0))), \dots \\ [\mathsf{suc}(\mathsf{suc}(0))] = \{\dots \\ [\mathsf{pred}(0)] = \{\mathsf{pred}(0), \mathsf{suc}(\mathsf{pred}(\mathsf{pred}(0))) \dots \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{suc}_{T_{\operatorname{INT}}/=_E} & \quad \left( [\operatorname{pred}(\operatorname{suc}(0))] \right) = [\operatorname{suc}(\operatorname{pred}(\operatorname{suc}(0)))] \\ & = [\operatorname{suc}(0)] \\ & = \operatorname{suc}_{T_{\operatorname{INT}}/=_E}([0]) \end{aligned}$$



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Algebraic Specification - Equational Calculus

Birkhoff's Theorem

#### Birkhoff's Theorem

**Theorem 6.17** (Birkhoff). For each specification spec = (sig, E) the following holds

$$E \models s = t$$
 iff  $E \vdash s = t$  (i. e.  $s =_E t$ )

**Definition 6.18.** Initial semantics

Let spec = (sig, E), sig strict. The algebra  $T_{sig}/=_E$  ( Quotient term algebra)

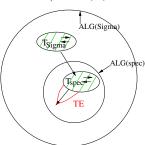
(= $_E$  the smallest congruence relation on  $T_{sig}$  generated by E) is defined as initial algebra semantics of spec = (sig, E).

It is term-generated and initial in ALG(spec)!

### Initial Algebra semantics

Initial Algebra semantics assigns to each equational specification spec the isomorphism class of the (initial) quotient term algebra  $T_{\rm sig}/=_E$ .

Write:  $T_{\text{spec}}$  or I(E)



$$sig = \Sigma$$
,  $spec = (\Sigma, E)$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Initial semantics

Basic properti

# Quotient term algebras

Quotient term algebras are ADT.

**Example 7.1.** (Continuation) spec = INT

$$\begin{array}{cccc} A^i_{\text{int}} & \mathbb{Z} & \{\textit{true}, \textit{false}\} & \{1\}^+ \cup \{0\}^+ \cup \{z\} \\ 0_{\mathcal{A}^i} & 0 & \textit{true} & z \\ \text{suc}_{\mathcal{A}^i} & \text{suc}_{\mathbb{Z}} & \text{not} & \dots \\ \text{pred}_{\mathcal{A}^i} & \text{pred}_{\mathbb{Z}} & \text{not} & \dots \end{array}$$

$$T_{\mathsf{INT}}/=_{\mathsf{E}} \quad [0] \mapsto \mathit{true} \quad [\mathsf{suc}^{2n}(0)] \mapsto \mathit{true} \quad [\mathsf{suc}^{2n+1}(0)] \mapsto \mathit{false} \quad [\mathsf{pred}^{2n}(0)] \mapsto \mathit{frue}$$

Basic properties

# Initial algebra

spec = (sig, E) Initial algebra  $T_{spec}$  (I(E))

#### Questions:

- ▶ Is  $T_{\text{spec}}$  computable?
- ▶ Is the word problem  $(T_{sig}, =_E)$  solvable?
- ▶ Is there an "operationalization" of  $T_{\text{spec}}$ ?
- ▶ Which (PL1-) properties are valid in  $T_{\text{spec}}$  ?
- ▶ How can we prove this properties? Are there general methods?



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

209

Initial semantics

Basic properties

# Equational theory / Inductive (equational-) theory

#### **Definition 7.2.** Properties of equations

- a)  $TH(E) = \{s = t : E \models s = t\}$  Equational theory Equations that are valid in all spec-algebras.
- b)  $ITH(E) = \{s = t : T_{spec} \models s = t\}$  inductive (=)-theory Equations that are valid in all term generated spec-algebras.

# Equational theory / Inductive (equational-) theory

#### Consequence 7.3. Basic properties

- a)  $TH(E) \subseteq ITH(E)$ , since  $T_{spec}$  is a model of E.
- b) Generally  $TH(E) \subseteq ITH(E)$

hence *E* is  $\omega$ -complete

 $\rightarrow$  proofs by consistency inductionless induction E recursively enumerable (r.e.), so TH(E) r.e., but ITH(E) generally not r.e.

- c)  $T_{spec} \models s = t$  iff  $\sigma(s) =_E \sigma(t)$  for each ground substitution of the Var. in  $s, t. \rightsquigarrow$  inductive proof methods, coverset induction
- d) E: x + 0 = x x + s(y) = s(x + y)  $\Rightarrow x + y = y + x \in ITH(E) - TH(E)$ (x + y) + z = x + (y + z) *Proof!*

#### - 4 ロト 4 部 ト 4 恵 ト 4 恵 ト 9 Q

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

....

Initial semantics

Basic properti

# Examples

#### Example 7.4. Basic examples

a) <u>spec</u> BOOL sorts bool

ops  $true, false : \rightarrow bool$ 

not: bool  $\rightarrow$  bool

and, or, impl, eqv : bool, bool  $\rightarrow$  bool if \_ then \_ else \_ : bool, bool, bool  $\rightarrow$  bool

Basic properties

# Example (Cont.)

```
\begin{array}{l} \underline{\mathsf{eqns}} & \mathsf{not}(\mathsf{true}) = \mathsf{false} \\ & \mathsf{not}(\mathsf{false}) = \mathsf{true} \\ & \mathsf{and}(\mathsf{true}, b) = b \\ & \mathsf{and}(\mathsf{false}, b) = \mathsf{false} \\ & \mathsf{or}(b, b') = \mathsf{not}(\mathsf{and}(\mathsf{not}(b), \mathsf{not}(b'))) \\ & \mathsf{impl}(b, b') = \mathsf{or}(\mathsf{not}(b), b') \\ & \mathsf{eqv}(b, b') = \mathsf{and}(\mathsf{impl}(b, b'), \mathsf{impl}(b', b)) \\ & \mathsf{if} \ \mathsf{true} \ b' \ \mathsf{else} \ b'' = b' \\ & \mathsf{if} \ \mathsf{false} \ b' \ \mathsf{else} \ b'' = b'' \\ & (\textit{T}_{\mathsf{BOOL}})_{\mathsf{bool}} = \{[\mathsf{true}], [\mathsf{false}]\} \ (\mathsf{Proof!}) \end{array}
```

ロト (個) (重) (重) 重 の(の

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

→ Defined- and constructor-functions.

20

Example (Cont.)

```
b) spec sorts char, set char, set a, b, c, \dots : \rightarrow char \emptyset : \rightarrow set insert : char, set \rightarrow set insert : char, set \rightarrow set insert (x, insert(x, s)) = insert(x, s) insert (x, insert(x, s)) = insert(x, insert(x, s)) (T_{soc}) char = \{a, b, c, \dots\} (T_{soc}) set = \{[\emptyset], [insert(a, insert(a, \dots, insert(a, \emptyset))], \dots \{\emptyset\} {insert (a, insert(a, \dots, insert(a, \emptyset))\}
```

```
Initial semantics
```

Basic properties

# Example (Cont.)

```
c)
                NAT
  spec
  sorts
               nat
                0:\rightarrow \mathsf{nat}
   ops
                 \mathsf{suc} : \mathsf{nat} \to \mathsf{nat}
                 \underline{\phantom{a}} + \underline{\phantom{a}}, \underline{\phantom{a}} * \underline{\phantom{a}} : \mathsf{nat}, \mathsf{nat} \to \mathsf{nat}
   eqns x + 0 = x
                 x + \operatorname{suc} y = \operatorname{suc}(x + y)
                x * 0 = 0
                x * \operatorname{suc}(y) = (x * y) + x
(T_{NAT})_{nat} = \{ [0, 0+0, 0*0, \dots]
                               [\operatorname{suc} 0, 0 + \operatorname{suc} 0, \dots]
                               [suc(suc(0)), \dots]
```

←□ → ←□ → ←□ → □ → ○

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

21

Basic properties

# Example (Cont.)

Basic properties

#### example

Continuation of d) binary tree.

```
\frac{\text{eqns}}{\max(n, n) = n}
\max(n, 0) = n
\max(\text{suc}(m), \text{suc}(n)) = \text{suc}(\max(m, n))
\text{height}(\text{leaf}) = 0
\text{height}(\text{both}(t, t')) = \text{suc}(\max(\text{height}(t), \text{height}(t')))
\text{height}(\text{left}(t)) = \text{suc}(\text{height}(t))
\text{height}(\text{right}(t)) = \text{suc}(\text{height}(t))
```

<ロ > < 個 > < 種 > < 種 > を重 > ・ 重 ・ 夕 < で

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

213

Initial semantics

Correctness and implementation

#### Correctness

**Definition 7.5.** A specification spec = (sig, E) is sig-correct for a sig-Algebra  $\mathfrak{A}$  iff  $T_{spec} \cong \mathfrak{A}$  (i.e. the unique homomorphism is a bijection).

**Example 7.6.** Application:

INT correct for  $\mathbb{Z}$ , BOOL correct for  $\mathbb{B}$ 

Note: The concept is restricted to initial semantics!

Initial semantics

Correctness and implementation

Correctness and implementation

# Restrictions/Forgetful functors

#### **Definition 7.7.** Restrictions/Forget-images

a)  $sig = (S, F, \tau)$ ,  $sig' = (S', F', \tau')$  signatures with  $sig \subseteq sig'$ , i.e.  $(S \subseteq S', F \subseteq F', \tau \subseteq \tau')$ .

For each sig'-algebra  $\mathfrak A$  let the sig-part  $\mathfrak A|_{sig}$  of  $\mathfrak A$  be the sig-Algebra with

i) 
$$(\mathfrak{A}|_{sig})_s = A_s$$
 for  $s \in S$ 

ii) 
$$f_{\mathfrak{A}|_{sig}} = f_{\mathfrak{A}}$$
 for  $f \in F$ 

Note:  $\mathfrak{A}|_{\text{sig}}$  is sig - algebra. The restriction of  $\mathfrak{A}$  to the signature sig.

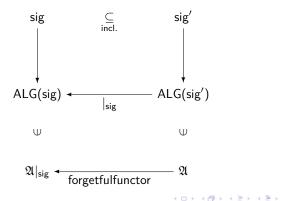
 $\mathfrak{A}|_{\text{sig}}$  is also called forget-image of  $\mathfrak{A}$  (with respect to sig).

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Initial semantics

# Restrictions/Forgetful functors

 $\mathfrak{A}|_{\text{sig}}$  forget-image of  $\mathfrak{A}$  (w.r. to sig). The forget image induces consequently a mapping (functor) between classes of algebras in the following way:



# Restrictions/Forgetful functor

b) A specification spec = (sig', E) with  $sig \subseteq sig'$  is correct for a sig-algebra  $\mathfrak A$  iff

$$(T_{\mathsf{spec}})|_{\mathsf{sig}} \cong \mathfrak{A}$$

c) A specification spec' = (sig', E') implements a specification spec = (sig, E) iff

$$\operatorname{sig} \subseteq \operatorname{sig}'$$
 and  $(T_{\operatorname{spec}'})|_{\operatorname{sig}} \cong T_{\operatorname{spec}}$ 

#### Note:

- ▶ A consistency-concept is not necessary for =-specification. ((initial) models always exist!).
- ▶ The general implementation concept  $(Cl(spec) \subseteq Cl(spec'))$  reduces here to = of the valid equations in the smaller language. "complete" theories.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Initial semantics

Correctness and implementation

#### **Problems**

Verification of  $s = t \in Th(E)$  or  $\in ITH(E)$ .

For Th(E) find  $=_E$  an equivalent, convergent term rewriting system (see group example).

For ITH(E) induction's methods:

s, t induce functions to  $T_{\text{spec}}$ . If  $x_1, \ldots, x_n$  are the variables in s and t, types  $s_1, \ldots, s_n$ .

$$s: (T_{\mathsf{spec}})_{s_1} \times \cdots \times (T_{\mathsf{spec}})_{s_n} \to (T_{\mathsf{spec}})_s$$

 $s = t \in ITh(E)$  iff s and t induce the same functions  $\rightsquigarrow$  prove this by induction on the construction of the ground terms.

NAT 
$$0$$
, suc,  $+ x + y = y + x \in ITH$   
 $0 + x = x$ 

#### **Problems**

$$0 + 0 = 0$$
 Ass. :  $0 + a = a$   
  $0 + Sa =_E S(0 + a) =_I S(a)$ 

► 
$$x + 0 = 0 + x$$
 Ass. :  $x + a = a + x$   
 $x + Sa =_E S(x + a) =_I S(a + x) =_E a + Sx \stackrel{?}{=} Sa + x$ 

► 
$$x + Sy = Sx + y$$
  
 $x + S0 =_E S(x + 0) =_E Sx =_E Sx + 0$   
 $x + SSa =_E S(x + Sa) =_I S(Sx + a) =_E Sx + Sa$ 

spec(sig, E)

 $P_{\rm spec}({\rm sig}, E, Prop)$ 

do not suffice

Equations only often Properties that should hold! → Verification tasks

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Initial semantics

Structuring mechanisms

# Structuring mechanisms

Horizontal: - Decomposition, - Combination,

- Extension. - Instantiation

Vertical: - Realisation, - Information hiding,

- Vertical composition

Combination, Enrichment, Extension, Modularisation, Parametrisation

→ Reusability.

# Structuring mechanisms

#### **BIN-TREE**

```
1) spec NAT 2) spec NAT1 sorts nat use NAT ops 0:\rightarrow nat ops max: nat, nat \rightarrow nat suc: nat \rightarrow nat eqns \max(0,n)=n \max(n,0)=n \max(s(m),s(n))=s(\max(m,n))
```



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

22

Initial semantics

Structuring mechanisms

### Structuring mechanisms

#### BIN-TREE (Cont.)

3) spec BINTREE1 sorts bintree ops leaf :→ bintree

left, right : bintree

→ bintree

both : bintree, bintree

→ bintree

4) spec BINTREE2 use NAT1, BINTREE1 ops height : bintree  $\rightarrow$  nat

eqns :

Initial semantics

Structuring mechanisms

#### Combination

**Definition 7.8** (Combination). Let  $spec_1 = (sig_1, E_1)$ , with  $sig_1 = (S_1, F_1, \tau_1)$  be a signature and  $sig_2 = [S_2, F_2, \tau_2]$  a triple,  $E_2$  set of equations.

comb =  $spec_1 + (sig_2, E_2)$  is called combination iff  $spec = ((S_1 \cup S_2), (F_1 \cup F_2), (\tau_1 \cup \tau_2)), E_1 \cup E_2)$  is a specification.

In particular  $((S_1 \cup S_2), (F_1 \cup F_2), (\tau_1 \cup \tau_2))$  is a signature and  $E_2$  contains "syntactically correct" equations.

The semantics of comb:  $T_{comb} := T_{spec}$ 

#### The semantics of comb

 $T_{\sf comb} := T_{\sf spec}$ 

**Typical cases:** 

 $S_2 = \emptyset$ ,  $F_2$  new function's symbols with arities  $\tau_2$  (in old sorts).

 $S_2$  new sorts,  $F_2$  new function's symbols.

 $au_2$  arities in new + old sorts.

 $E_2$  only "new" equations.

Notations: use, include (protected)

# Example

#### Example 7.9.

a) Step-by-step design of integer numbers

#### semantics

$$\begin{array}{lll} \textit{spec} & \mathsf{INT1} \\ \mathsf{sorts} & \mathsf{int} & & & & & & \\ \mathsf{ops} & 0 : & \to \mathsf{int} & & & & \\ & 0 : & \to \mathsf{int} & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\ & &$$

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Initial semantics

Structuring mechanisms

# Example (Cont.)

Question: Is the INT1-part of  $T_{\text{INT2}}$  equal to  $T_{\text{INT1}}$ ?? Does INT2 implement INT1?

$$(T_{\mathsf{INT2}})|_{\mathsf{INT1}} \cong T_{\mathsf{INT1}}$$

$$\begin{split} (\mathbb{Z}, 0, \mathsf{suc}_{\mathbb{Z}}, \mathsf{pred}_{\mathbb{Z}})|_{\mathsf{INT1}} \\ (\mathbb{Z}, 0, \mathsf{suc}_{\mathbb{Z}}) & \not\cong & (\mathbb{N}, 0, \mathsf{suc}_{\mathbb{N}}) \end{split}$$

Caution: Not always the proper data is specified! Here new data objects of sort int were introduced.

# Example (Cont.)

b) spec NAT2 use NAT eqns 
$$\operatorname{suc}(\operatorname{suc}(x)) = x$$
 
$$(T_{\text{NAT2}})|_{\text{NAT}} = (\mathbb{N} \mod 2)|_{\text{NAT}} = \mathbb{N} \mod 2 \not\cong \mathbb{N} = T_{\text{NAT}}$$

Problem: Adding new or identifying old elements.

#### Problems with the combination

Let

Structuring mechanisms

$$\mathsf{comb} = \mathsf{spec}_1 + (\mathsf{sig}, E)$$

$$(T_{comb})|_{spec_1}$$
 is  $spec_1$  Algebra  $T_{spec_1}$  is initial  $spec_1$  algebra  $\longrightarrow$ 

 $\exists$ ! homomorphism  $h: T_{\mathsf{spec}_1} \to (T_{\mathsf{comb}})|_{\mathsf{spec}_1}$ 

#### Properties of

h: not injective / not surjective / bijective.

e.g.  $(T_{\text{BINTREE2}})|_{\text{NAT}} \cong T_{\text{NAT}}$ .

#### Extension and enrichment

#### Definition 7.10.

- a) A combination comb =  $spec_1 + (sig, E)$  is an extension iff  $(\mathcal{T}_{comb})|_{spec_1} \cong \mathcal{T}_{spec_1}$
- b) An extension is called enrichment when sig does not include new sorts, i.e.  $sig = [\varnothing, F_2, \tau_2]$
- ► Find sufficient conditions (syntactical or semantical) that guarantee that a combination is an extension

(D) 4B) 4B) 4B) B 990

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

22

Initial semantics

Structuring mechanisms

#### Parameterisation

**Definition 7.11** (Parameterised Specifications). A parameterised specification Parameter=(Formal, Body) consist of two specifications: formal and body with formal  $\subseteq$  body.

i.e. Formal= $(sig_F, E_F)$ , Body= $(sig_B, E_B)$ , where  $sig_F \subseteq sig_B$   $E_F \subseteq E_B$ .

Notation: Body[Formal]

Syntactically: Body = Formal +(sig', E') is a combination.

Note: In general it is not be required that Formal or Body[Formal] have an initial semantics.

It is not necessary that there exist ground terms for all the sorts in Formal. Only until a concrete specification is "substituted", this requirement will be fulfilled.

Initial semantics

Structuring mechanisms

### Example

Example 7.12. spec ELEM  $(T_{spec})_{elem} = \emptyset$  sorts elem ops  $next : elem \rightarrow elem$ spec STRING[ELEM]  $(T_{spec})_{string} = \{[empty]\}$ use ELEM sorts string ops  $empty : \rightarrow string$  unit :  $elem \rightarrow string$  concat :  $string, string \rightarrow string$  ladd :  $elem, string \rightarrow string$  radd :  $string, elem \rightarrow string$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Initial semantics

Structuring mechanisms

# Example (Cont.)

eqns  $\operatorname{concat}(s,\operatorname{empty}) = s$   $\operatorname{concat}(\operatorname{empty},s) = s$   $\operatorname{concat}(\operatorname{concat}(s_1,s_2),s_3) = \operatorname{concat}(s_1,\operatorname{concat}(s_2,s_3))$   $\operatorname{ladd}(e,s) = \operatorname{concat}(\operatorname{unit}(e),s)$  $\operatorname{radd}(s,e) = \operatorname{concat}(s,\operatorname{unit}(e))$ 

Parameter passing:  $ELEM \rightarrow NAT$ 

 $STRING[ELEM] \rightarrow STRING[NAT]$ 

Assignment: formal parameter  $\rightarrow$  current parameter

 $S_F \rightarrow S_A$  $Op \rightarrow Op_A$ 

Mapping of the sorts and functions, semantics?

# Signature morphisms - Parameter passing

#### Definition 7.13.

a) Let  $sig_i = (S_i, F_i, \tau_i)$  i = 1, 2 be signatures. A pair of functions  $\sigma = (g, h)$  with  $g: S_1 \to S_2, h: F_1 \to F_2$  is a signature morphism, in case that for every  $f \in F_1$ 

$$\tau_2(hf) = g(\tau_1 f)$$

(g extended to  $g: S_1^* \to S_2^*$ ).

In the example 
$$g :: elem \rightarrow nat$$
  $h :: next \rightarrow suc$   
Also  $\sigma : sig_{BOOL} \rightarrow sig_{NAT}$  with

is a signature morphism.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Signature morphisms - Parameter passing

Initial semantics

### Signature morphisms - Parameter passing

 b) spec = Body[Formal] parameter specification and Actual a standard specification.

A parameter passing is a signature morphism  $\sigma: sig(Formal) \rightarrow sig(Actual)$  in which Actual is called the current parameter specification.

(Actual,  $\sigma$ ) defines a specification VALUE through the following syntactical changes to Body:

- 1) Replace Formal with Actual: Body[Actual].
- 2) Replace in the arities of  $op: s_1 \dots s_n \to s_0 \in \mathsf{Body}$ , which are not in Formal,  $s_i \in \mathsf{Formal}$  with  $\sigma(s_i)$ .
- 3) Replace in each not-formal equation L = R of Body each  $o_P \in \text{Formal with } \sigma(o_P)$ .
- 4) Interprete each variable of a type s with  $s \in$  Formal as variable of type  $\sigma(s)$ .
- 5) Avoid name conflicts between actual and Body/Formal by renaming properly.

Initial semantics

Signature morphisms - Parameter passing

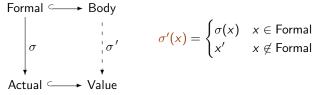
### Parameter passing

Notation:

$$Value = Body[Actual, \sigma]$$

Consequently for  $\sigma: \mathsf{sig}(\mathsf{Formal}) \to \mathsf{sig}(\mathsf{Actual})$  we get a a signature morphism

 $\sigma'$ : sig(Body[Formal])  $\rightarrow$  sig(Body[Actual,  $\sigma$ ] with



Where x' is a renaming, if there are naming conflicts.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques 235

# Signature morphisms (Cont.)

**Definition 7.14.** Let  $\sigma: sig^t \rightarrow sig$  be a signature morphism.

Then for each sig-Algebra  $\mathfrak A$  define  $\mathfrak A|_{\sigma}$  a sig'-Algebra, in which for  $\operatorname{sig}' = (S', F', \tau')$ 

$$(\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma})_s = A_{\sigma(s)} \ s \in S' \ and \ f_{\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma}} = \sigma(f)_{\mathfrak{A}} \ f \in F'.$$

 $\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma}$  is called forget-image of  $\mathfrak{A}$  along  $\sigma$ 

(Special case:  $sig' \subseteq sig : \hookrightarrow$ )  $|_{sig'}$ 

◆ロト 4回ト 4 恵 ト 4 恵 ト . 車 . 夕 Q (\*)

# Example

**Example 7.15.**  $\mathfrak{A} = T_{\mathsf{NAT}}$  (with 0, suc, plus, times)  $sig' = sig(\mathsf{BOOL})$   $sig = sig(\mathsf{NAT})$   $\sigma : sig' \to sig$  the one considered previously.

$$\begin{array}{ll} ((T_{\mathsf{NAT}})|_{\sigma})_{\mathsf{bool}} &= (T_{\mathsf{NAT}})_{\sigma(\mathsf{bool})} = (T_{\mathsf{NAT}})_{\mathsf{nat}} \\ &= \{[0], [\mathsf{suc}(0)], \ldots\} \end{array}$$

□▶→□▶→重▶→重→□

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

237

Initial semantics

Signature morphisms - Parameter passing

# Forget images of homomorphisms

**Definition 7.16.** Let  $\sigma: sig' \to sig$  a signature morphism,  $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}$  sig-algebras and  $h: \mathfrak{A} \to \mathfrak{B}$  a sig-homomorphism, then

 $h|_{\sigma}:=\{h_{\sigma(s)}\mid s\in S'\}$  ( with sig'=(S',F', au')) is a sig'-homomorphism from  $\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma}\to\mathfrak{B}|_{\sigma}$  by setting

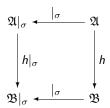
$$(h|_{\sigma})_s = h_{\sigma(s)}: A_{\sigma(s)} \rightarrow B_{\sigma(s)}$$

$$(A|_{\sigma})_s \rightarrow (B|_{\sigma})_s$$

 $h|_{\sigma}$  is called the forget image of h along  $\sigma$ 

#### Signature morphisms - Parameter passing

### Forgetful functors



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

기 시 본 기 시 본 기 본 기 시

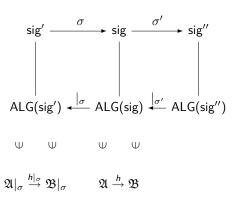
239

Initial semantics

Signature morphisms - Parameter passing

#### Forgetful functors

Properties of  $h|_{\sigma}$  (forget image of h along  $\sigma$ )



Compatible with identity, composition and homomorphisms.

# Forgetful functors

Let  $\sigma: \mathsf{sig}' \to \mathsf{sig}, \, \mathfrak{A}, \, \mathfrak{B}$ , sig-algebras,  $h: \mathfrak{A} \to \mathfrak{B}$ , sig-homomorphism.  $h|_{\sigma} = \{h_{\sigma(\mathfrak{s})} \mid \mathfrak{s} \in \mathcal{S}'\}$ ,  $\mathsf{sig}' = (\mathcal{S}', \mathcal{F}', \tau')$ , with  $h|_{\sigma}: A|_{\sigma} \to B|_{\sigma}$  forget image of h along  $\sigma$ .

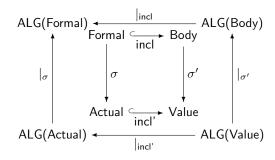
◆ロト ◆個ト ◆意ト ◆意ト · 意 · からの

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Initial semantics

Signature morphisms - Parameter passing

# Parameter Specification Body[Formal]



### Semantics of parameter passing (only signature)

**Definition 7.17.** Let Body[Formal] be a parameterized specification.  $\sigma$ : Formal  $\rightarrow$  Actual signature morphism.

Semantics of the the "instantiation" i.e. parameter passing [Actual,  $\sigma$ ].

$$\sigma: \mathsf{Formal} \to \mathsf{Actual}$$
 
$$\downarrow$$
 initial semantics of value. i. e. 
$$T_{\mathsf{Body}[\mathsf{Actual},\sigma]}$$

Can be seen as a mapping :  $S :: (T_{Actual}, \sigma) \mapsto T_{Body[Actual, \sigma]}$ 

This mapping between initial algebras can be interpreted as correspondence between formal algebras  $\rightarrow$  body-algebras.

$$(T_{\mathsf{Actual}})|_{\sigma} \mapsto (T_{\mathsf{Body}[\mathsf{Actual},\sigma]})|_{\sigma'}$$

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

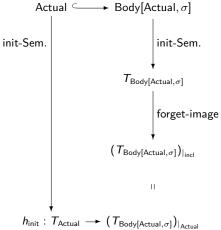
\_ \_ \_

Initial semantics

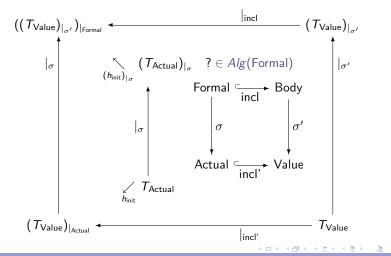
Semantics parameter passing

#### Semantics parameter passing

$$(T_{\mathsf{Actual}})|_{\sigma} \mapsto (T_{\mathsf{Body}[\mathsf{Actual},\sigma]})|_{\sigma'}$$



# Mapping between initial algebras



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

245

nitial semantic

Semantics parameter passing

### Properties of the signature morphism

Formal sorts elem eqns 
$$a=b$$
  $b \rightarrow 1$   $b \rightarrow 1$   $c \rightarrow Actual$  sorts nat ops  $a,b:\rightarrow$  elem  $a \rightarrow 0$  ops  $a,b:\rightarrow$  nat eqns  $a=b$   $b \rightarrow 1$   $c \rightarrow Actual$   $a \rightarrow 0$  ops  $a \rightarrow Actual$   $a \rightarrow Ac$ 

 $\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma} \in \mathsf{Alg}(\mathsf{sig}\,\mathsf{Formal})\;(A|_{\sigma})_{\mathsf{elem}} = \{0,1\}$ 

$$a|_{\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma}}=0\neq 1=b|_{\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma}}$$

Equation from Formal is not fulfilled! i.e.  $\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma} \notin Alg(Formal)$ .

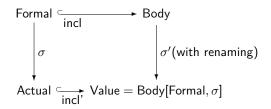
Initial semantics

Semantics parameter passing

### Parameter passing (Actual, $\sigma$ )

#### Body[Formal]

$$\sigma: sig(Formal) \rightarrow sig(Actual)$$
  
signature morphism



Precondition: sig(Actual) and sig(Value) strict.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Initial semantics

Semantics parameter passin

# Parameter passing (Actual, $\sigma$ )

Forgetful functor:  $|_{\sigma}: Alg(sig) \rightarrow Alg(sig')$ 

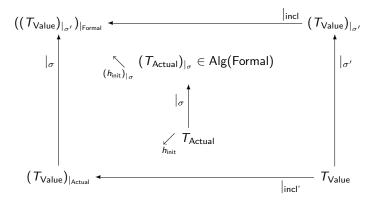
$$\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma}$$
 for  $\sigma: \mathsf{sig}' \to \mathsf{sig}$ 

 $h:\mathfrak{A} o\mathfrak{B}$  sig-homomorphism

$$h|_{\sigma}:\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma}\to\mathfrak{B}|_{\sigma}$$

sig'-homomorphism

# Parameter passing (Actual, $\sigma$ )



**Problems**: 1)  $(T_{Actual})|_{\sigma} \notin Alg(Formal)$ ,

2)  $h_{\text{init}}$  is not a bijection.

<ロト <<br/>
● <br/>
ト <<br/>
● <br/>
・ <br/>

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

249

itial semantic

Specification morphisms

### Specification morphisms

**Definition 7.18.** Let spec' = (sig', E'), spec = (sig, E) (general) specifications.

A signature morphism  $\sigma$ :  $sig' \to sig$  is called a specification morphism, if  $\sigma(s) = \sigma(t) \in Th(E)$  for every  $s = t \in E'$  holds.

*Write*:  $\sigma$ :  $spec' \rightarrow spec$ 

Fact: If  $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathsf{Alg}(\mathsf{spec})$  then  $\mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma} \in \mathsf{Alg}(\mathsf{spec}')$  i.e.  $|_{\sigma} : \mathsf{Alg}(\mathsf{spec}) \to \mathsf{Alg}(\mathsf{spec}')!$ 

Often "only"the weaker condition  $\sigma(s) = \sigma(t) \in ITh(E)$  is demanded in above definition. More spec morphisms!

Initial semantics

Specification morphisms

#### Semantically correct parameter passing

**Definition 7.19.** A parameter passing for Body[Formal] is a pair (Actual,  $\sigma$ ): Actual an equational specification and  $\sigma$ : Formal  $\rightarrow$  Actual a specification morphism.

Hence::  $(T_{\mathsf{Actual}})|_{\sigma} \in \mathsf{Alg}(\mathsf{Formal})$ 

- Demand also  $h_{\text{init}}$  bijection. Proof tasks become easier.

There are syntactical restrictions that guarantee this.

Algebraic Specification languages

CLEAR, Act-one, -Cip-C, Affirm, ASL, Aspik, OBJ, ASF,  $\stackrel{\leadsto}{+}$  newer languages: - Spectrum, - Troll.

#### Example

#### Example 7.20.

Formal :: 
$$\begin{cases} \textit{spec} & \mathsf{ELEMENT} \\ \mathsf{use} & \mathsf{BOOL} \\ \mathsf{sorts} & \mathsf{elem} \\ \mathsf{ops} & . \leq . : \mathsf{elem}, \mathsf{elem} \to \mathsf{bool} \\ \mathsf{eqns} & x \leq x = \mathit{true} \\ & \mathsf{imp}(x \leq y \; \mathit{and} \; y \leq z, x \leq z) = \mathit{true} \\ & x \leq y \; \mathit{or} \; y \leq x = \mathit{true} \end{cases}$$

# Example (Cont.)

 $\begin{array}{lll} \text{spec} & \text{LIST[ELEMENT]} \\ \text{use} & \text{ELEMENT} \\ \text{sorts} & \text{list} \\ \text{ops} & \text{nil} : \rightarrow \text{list} \\ & . : \text{elem, list} \rightarrow \text{list} \\ & \text{insert} : \text{elem, list} \rightarrow \text{list} \\ & \text{insertsort} : \text{list} \rightarrow \text{list} \\ & \text{case} : \text{bool, list, list} \rightarrow \text{list} \\ & \text{sorted} : \text{list} \rightarrow \text{bool} \\ \end{array}$ 

ロ ト 4 同 ト 4 目 ト 4 同 ト 4 回 ト 4

10/10/12/12/

Initial semantics

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Specification morphisms

# Example (Cont.)

```
eqns \operatorname{case}(\operatorname{true}, I_1, I_2) = I_1

\operatorname{case}(\operatorname{false}, I_1, I_2) = I_2

\operatorname{insert}(x, \operatorname{nil}) = x.\operatorname{nil}

\operatorname{insert}(x, y.I) = \operatorname{case}(x \leq y, x.y.I, y.\operatorname{insert}(x, I))

\operatorname{insertsort}(\operatorname{nil}) = \operatorname{nil}

\operatorname{insertsort}(x.I) = \operatorname{insert}(x, \operatorname{insertsort}(I))

\operatorname{sorted}(\operatorname{nil}) = \operatorname{true}

\operatorname{sorted}(x.\operatorname{nil}) = \operatorname{true}

\operatorname{sorted}(x.y.I) = \operatorname{if} x \leq y \operatorname{then} \operatorname{sorted}(y.I) \operatorname{else} \operatorname{false}
```

Specification morphisms

# Example (Cont.)

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Initial semantics

Specification morphisms

# Example (Cont.)

Property: sorted(insertsort(I)) = true

Abstract Reduction Systems

Reduction Systems

# Abstract Reduction Systems: Fundamental notions and notations

**Definition 8.1.**  $(U, \rightarrow)$   $U \neq \emptyset, \rightarrow$  binary relation is called a reduction system.

- Notions:
- $\triangleright$   $x \in U$  reducible iff  $\exists y : x \to y$ irreducible if not reducible.
- $\rightarrow$  x  $\stackrel{*}{\longrightarrow}$  y reflexive, transitive closure, x  $\stackrel{+}{\rightarrow}$  y transitive closure,  $x \stackrel{*}{\longleftrightarrow} y$  reflexive, symmetrical, transitive closure.
- $\triangleright x \xrightarrow{i} y \ i \in \mathbb{N}$  defined as usual. Notice  $x \xrightarrow{*} y = \bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} x \xrightarrow{i} y$ .
- $\rightarrow$  x  $\stackrel{*}{\longrightarrow}$  y, y irreducible, then y is a normal form for x. Abb:: NF
- ▶  $\Delta(x) = \{y \mid x \rightarrow y\}$ , the set of direct successors of x.
- $ightharpoonup \Delta^+(x)$  proper successors,  $\Delta^*(x)$  successors.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Reduction Systems  Term Rewriting Systems

Abstract Reduction Systems

#### Notions and notations

- ▶  $\Lambda(x) = \max\{i \mid \exists y : x \xrightarrow{i} y\}$  derivational complexity.  $\Lambda: U \to \mathbb{N}_{\infty}$
- ▶ → noetherian (terminating, satisfies the chain condition), in case there is no infinite chain  $x_1 \rightarrow x_2 \rightarrow x_3 \rightarrow \cdots$ .
- ▶  $\rightarrow$  bounded, in case that  $\Lambda: U \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ .
- $\rightarrow$  cycle free ::  $\neg \exists x \in U : x \stackrel{+}{\rightarrow} x$
- ▶  $\rightarrow$  locally finite x  $\stackrel{\checkmark}{\rightarrow}$   $\Rightarrow$  , i.e.  $\Delta(x)$  finite for every x.

#### Notions and notations

#### Simple properties:

- ightharpoonup noetherian, then ightharpoonup cycle free.
- ightharpoonup bounded, so ightharpoonup noetherian. but not the other way around!
- ightharpoonup 
  igh

#### Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique Reduction Systems Term Rewriting Systems Principle of the Noetherian Induction

### Principle of the Noetherian Induction

**Definition 8.2.**  $\rightarrow$  binary relation on U, P predicate on U. P is  $\rightarrow$ -complete, when

$$\forall x [(\forall y \in \Delta^+(x) : P(y)) \supset P(x)]$$

#### Fact:

**PNI**: If  $\rightarrow$  is noetherian and P is  $\rightarrow$ -complete, then P(x) holds for all  $x \in U$ .

# **Applications**

**Lemma 8.3.**  $\rightarrow$  noetherian, then each  $x \in U$  has at least one normal form.

More applications to come.... See e.g. König's lemma.

**Definition 8.4.** *Main properties for*  $(U, \rightarrow)$ 

- ightharpoonup o confluent iff  $\stackrel{*}{\longleftarrow} \circ \stackrel{*}{\longrightarrow} \subset \stackrel{*}{\longrightarrow} \circ \stackrel{*}{\longleftarrow}$
- ightharpoonup ightharpoonup Church-Rosser iff  $\stackrel{*}{\longleftrightarrow}$   $\stackrel{}{\subset}$   $\stackrel{*}{\longrightarrow}$   $\circ$   $\stackrel{*}{\longleftrightarrow}$
- ightharpoonup 
  ightharpoonup locally-confluent iff 
  ightharpoonup 
  ightharpoon
- ightharpoonup ightharpoonup strong-confluent iff ightharpoonup ightharpoonup
- ► Abbreviation: joinable ↓:

$$\downarrow = \stackrel{*}{\longrightarrow} \circ \stackrel{*}{\longleftarrow}$$



### Important relations

**Lemma 8.5.**  $\rightarrow$  confluent iff  $\rightarrow$  Church-Rosser.

**Theorem 8.6.** (Newmann Lemma) Let  $\rightarrow$  be noetherian, then

 $\rightarrow$  confluent iff  $\rightarrow$  locally confluent.

Consequence 8.7.

- a) Let  $\rightarrow$  confluent and  $x \stackrel{*}{\longleftrightarrow} y$ .
  - i) If y is irreducible, then  $x \stackrel{*}{\longrightarrow} y$ . In particular, when x, y irreducible, then x = v.
  - ii)  $x \stackrel{*}{\longleftrightarrow} y$  iff  $\Delta^*(x) \cap \Delta^*(y) \neq \emptyset$ .
  - iii) If x has a NF, then it is unique.
  - iv) If  $\rightarrow$  is noetherian, then each  $x \in U$  has exactly one NF: notation x
- b) If in  $(U, \rightarrow)$  each  $x \in U$  has exactly one NF, then  $\rightarrow$  is confluent (in general not noetherian).

# Convergent Reduction Systems

Reduction Systems

Important relations

**Definition 8.8.**  $(U, \rightarrow)$  *convergent iff*  $\rightarrow$  *noetherian and confluent.* 

 $x \stackrel{*}{\longleftrightarrow} y \text{ iff } x \downarrow = y \downarrow$ Important since:

Hence if  $\rightarrow$  effective  $\rightsquigarrow$  decision procedure for Word Problem (WP):

For programming:  $x \xrightarrow{*} x \downarrow$ ,  $f(t_1, \ldots, t_n) \xrightarrow{*}$  "value"

As usual these properties are in general undecidable properties.

**Task:** Find sufficient computable conditions which guarantee these properties.

		263
000000000000000000		
	>00000000000000000000000000000000000000	2000000000000000

#### Termination and Confluence

Sufficient conditions/techniques

**Lemma 8.9.**  $(U, \rightarrow)$ ,  $(M, \succ)$ ,  $\succ$  well founded (WF) partial ordering. If there is  $\varphi: U \to M$  with  $\varphi(x) \succ \varphi(y)$  for  $x \to y$ , then  $\to$  is noetherian.

**Example 8.10.** Often  $(\mathbb{N}, >), (\Sigma^*, >)$  can be used. For  $w \in \Sigma^*$  let |w| length,  $|w|_a$  a-length  $a \in \Sigma$ .

WF-partial orderings on  $\Sigma^*$ 

- $\triangleright$  x > y iff |x| > |y|
- $\triangleright$  x > y iff  $|x|_a > |y|_a$
- $\blacktriangleright$  x > y iff |x| > |y|,  $|x| = |y| \land x \succ_{lex} y$

Notice that pure lex-ordering on  $\Sigma^*$  is not noetherian.

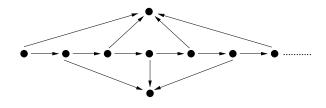
Reduction Systems

#### Sufficient conditions for confluence

Termination: Confluence iff local confluence Without termination this doesn't hold!



or



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction Systems Term Rewriting Systems

Sufficient conditions for confluence

#### Confluence without termination

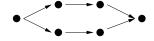
**Theorem 8.11.**  $\rightarrow$  *is confluent iff for every u*  $\in$  *U holds:* 

from  $u \to x$  and  $u \stackrel{*}{\to} y$  it follows  $x \downarrow y$ .

▷ one-sided localization of confluence <</p>

**Theorem 8.12.** If  $\rightarrow$  is strong confluent, then  $\rightarrow$  is confluent.

Not a necessary condition:



#### Combination of Relations

**Definition 8.13.** Two relations  $\rightarrow_1$ ,  $\rightarrow_2$  on U commute, iff

$${\scriptstyle \stackrel{*}{_{1}\leftarrow}} \circ \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}_{2} \ \subseteq \ \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}_{2} \circ {\scriptstyle \stackrel{*}{_{1}\leftarrow}}$$

They commute locally iff  $_1 \leftarrow \circ \rightarrow_2 \subseteq \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow_2} \circ \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow_1} \leftarrow$ .



commutating

locally commutating

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques Reduction Systems Term Rewriting Systems

Sufficient conditions for confluence

### Combination of Relations

**Lemma 8.14.** Let  $\rightarrow = \rightarrow_1 \cup \rightarrow_2$ 

- (1) If  $\rightarrow_1$  and  $\rightarrow_2$  commutate locally and  $\rightarrow$  is noetherian, then  $\rightarrow_1$  and  $\rightarrow_2$  commutate.
- (2) If  $\rightarrow_1$  and  $\rightarrow_2$  are confluent and commutate, then  $\rightarrow$  is also confluent.

Problem: Non-Orientability:

(a) 
$$x + 0 = x$$
,  $x + s(y) = s(x + y)$   
(b)  $x + y = y + x$ ,  $(x + y) + z = x + (y + z)$ 

▷ Problem: permutative rules like (b) <</p>

# Non-Orientability

**Definition 8.15.** Let  $(U, \rightarrow, \vdash)$  with  $\rightarrow$  a binary relation,  $\vdash$  a symmetrical relation.

Let 
$$\models$$
 =  $\leftrightarrow \cup \vdash$ ,  $\sim$  =  $\stackrel{*}{\vdash}$ ,  $\approx$  =  $\stackrel{*}{\models}$ ,  $\rightarrow_{\sim}$  =  $\sim \circ \rightarrow \circ \sim$ ,  $\downarrow_{\sim}$  =  $\stackrel{*}{\rightarrow} \circ \sim \circ \stackrel{*}{\leftarrow}$ .

If  $x \downarrow_{\sim} y$  holds, then  $x, y \in U$  are called joinable modulo  $\sim$ .

- ightarrow is called Church-Rosser modulo  $\sim$  iff  $\approx \subseteq \downarrow_{\sim}$
- $\rightarrow$  is called locally confluent modulo  $\sim$  iff  $\leftarrow \circ \rightarrow \subset \downarrow_{\sim}$
- $\rightarrow$  is called locally coherent modulo  $\sim$  iff  $\leftarrow \circ \vdash \vdash \subset \downarrow_{\sim}$



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction Systems  Term Rewriting Systems

Sufficient conditions for confluence

# Non-Orientability - Reduction Modulo ⊢

**Theorem 8.16.** Let  $\rightarrow_{\sim}$  be terminating. Then  $\rightarrow$  is Church-Rosser  $modulo \sim iff \sim is local confluent modulo \sim and local coherent modulo \sim$ .



Most frequent application: Modulo AC (Associativity + Commutativity)

# Representation of equivalence relations by convergent reduction relations

**Situation**: Given:  $(U, \vdash)$  and a noetherian PO > on U, find:  $(U, \rightarrow)$ 

- (i)  $\rightarrow$  convergent using > on U and
- (ii)  $\stackrel{*}{\leftrightarrow}$  =  $\sim$  with  $\sim$  =  $\stackrel{\hat{}}{\vdash}$

**Idea**: Approximation of  $\rightarrow$  through transformations

$$(\vdash,\emptyset)=(\vdash_0,\rightarrow_0)\vdash(\vdash_1,\rightarrow_1)\vdash(\vdash_2,\rightarrow_2)\vdash\ldots$$

Invariant in i-th. step:

Equivalence relations and reduction relations

(i) 
$$\sim = (\vdash_i \cup \leftrightarrow_i)^*$$
 and

(ii) 
$$\rightarrow_i \subseteq >$$

Goal:  $\vdash_i = \emptyset$  for an i and  $\rightarrow_i$  convergent.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques Reduction Systems Term Rewriting Systems Equivalence relations and reduction relations

# Representation of equivalence relations by convergent reduction relations

Allowed operations in i-th. step:

- (1) Orient::  $u \rightarrow_{i+1} v$ , if u > v and  $u \vdash_i v$
- (2) New equivalences::  $u \mapsto_{i+1} v$ , if  $u \mapsto_i v$
- (3) Simplify::  $u \vdash_i v$  to  $u \vdash_{i+1} w$ , if  $v \rightarrow_i w$

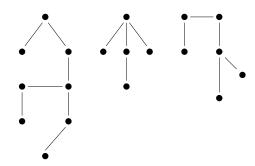
Goal: Limit system

$$\rightarrow = \rightarrow_{\infty} = \bigcup \{ \rightarrow_i | i \in \mathbb{N} \} \text{ with } \vdash \mid_{\infty} = \emptyset$$

Hence:

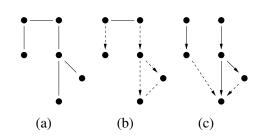
- $-\longrightarrow_{\infty}\subseteq$  >, i.e. noetherian
- $\stackrel{*}{\longleftrightarrow} = \sim$
- $\longrightarrow_{\infty}$  convergent!

# Grafical representation of an equivalence relation



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques Reduction Systems Term Rewriting Systems Equivalence relations and reduction relations

#### Transformation of an equivalence relation



# Inference system for the transformation of an equivalence relation

**Definition 8.17.** Let > be a noetherian PO on U. The inference system  $\mathcal{P}$  on objects  $(\vdash, \rightarrow)$  contains the following rules:

(1) Orient

Equivalence relations and reduction relations

Reduction Systems

$$\frac{(\vdash \vdash \cup \{u \vdash \vdash v\}, \rightarrow)}{(\vdash \vdash, \rightarrow \cup \{u \rightarrow v\})} \text{ if } u > v$$

(2) Introduce new consequence

$$\frac{(\vdash,\rightarrow)}{(\vdash,\cup\{u\vdash\vdash v\},\rightarrow)} \text{ if } u\leftarrow\circ\rightarrow v$$

(3) Simplify

$$\frac{(\vdash \cup \{u \vdash v\}, \rightarrow)}{(\vdash \cup \{u \vdash w\}, \rightarrow)} \text{ if } v \rightarrow w$$

#### Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques Reduction Systems Term Rewriting Systems Equivalence relations and reduction relations

# Inference system (Cont.)

(4) Eliminate identities

$$\frac{(\vdash \cup \{u \vdash u\}, \rightarrow)}{(\vdash \vdash, \rightarrow)}$$

$$(\vdash, \rightarrow) \vdash_{\mathcal{P}} (\vdash, \rightarrow')$$
 if

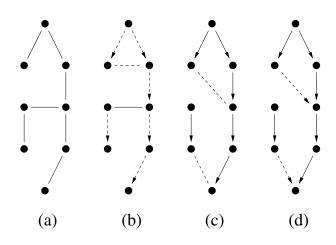
 $(\vdash, \rightarrow)$  can be transformed in one step with a rule  $\mathcal{P}$  into  $(\vdash', \rightarrow')$ .

 $\vdash_{\mathcal{D}}^*$  transformation relation in finite number of steps with  $\mathcal{P}$ .

A sequence  $((\vdash_i, \rightarrow_i))_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$  is called  $\mathcal{P}$ -derivation, if

$$(\vdash_i, \rightarrow_i) \vdash_{\mathcal{P}} (\vdash_{i+1}, \rightarrow_{i+1})$$
 for every  $i \in \mathbb{N}$ 

# Transformation with the inference system



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Transformation with the inference system

Reduction Systems

Term Rewriting Systems

# Properties of the inference system

**Lemma 8.18.** Let  $(\vdash, \rightarrow) \vdash_{\mathcal{P}} (\vdash', \rightarrow')$ 

(a) If 
$$\rightarrow \subseteq >$$
, then  $\rightarrow' \subseteq >$ 

(b) 
$$(\vdash \cup \leftrightarrow)^* = (\vdash \cup \leftrightarrow')^*$$

#### Problem:

When does  $\mathcal{P}$  deliver a convergent reduction relation  $\rightarrow$ ? How to measure progress of the transformation?

Idea: Define an ordering  $>_{\mathcal{D}}$  on equivalence-proofs, and prove that the inference system  $\mathcal{P}$  decreases proofs with respect to  $>_{\mathcal{P}}!$ 

In the proof ordering  $\stackrel{*}{\longrightarrow} \circ \stackrel{*}{\longleftarrow}$  proofs should be minimal.

#### **Equivalence Proofs**

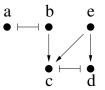
Transformation with the inference system

Reduction Systems

**Definition 8.19.** Let  $(\vdash, \rightarrow)$  be given and > a noetherian PO on U. Furthermore let  $(\vdash \cup \leftrightarrow)^* = \sim$ .

A proof for  $u \sim v$  is a sequence  $u_0 *_1 u_1 *_2 \cdots *_n u_n$  with  $*_i \in \{\vdash \vdash, \leftarrow, \rightarrow\}$ ,  $u_i \in U$ ,  $u_0 = u$ ,  $u_n = v$  and for every i  $u_i *_{i+1} u_{i+1}$  holds. P(u) = u is proof for  $u \sim u$ .

A proof of the form  $u \stackrel{*}{\to} z \stackrel{*}{\leftarrow} v$  is called V-proof.



Proofs for  $a \sim e$ :

$$P_1(a,e) = a \vdash b \rightarrow c \vdash d \leftarrow e$$
  $P_2(a,e) = a \vdash b \rightarrow c \leftarrow e$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction Systems

Term Rewriting Systems

Transformation with the inference system

### **Proof orderings**

Two proofs in  $(\vdash, \rightarrow)$  are called equivalent, if they prove the equivalence of the same pair (u, v). Hence e.g.  $P_1(a, e)$  and  $P_2(a, e)$  are equivalent.

Notice: If  $P_1(u, v)$ ,  $P_2(v, w)$  and  $P_3(w, z)$  are proofs, then  $P(u, z) = P_1(u, v)P_2(v, w)P_3(w, z)$  is also a proof.

**Definition 8.20.** A proof ordering  $>_B$  is a PO on the set of proofs that is monotonic, i.e.,  $P >_B Q$  for each subproof, and if  $P >_B Q$  then  $P_1PP_2 >_B P_1QP_2$ .

**Lemma 8.21.** Let > be noetherian PO on U and  $(\vdash, \rightarrow)$ , then there exist noetherian proof orderings on the set of equivalence proofs.

Proof: Using multiset orderings.

◆ロト 4個ト 4 恵 ト 4 恵 ト . 重 . 夕久の

# Multisets and the multiset ordering

Instruments: Multiset ordering

Objects: U, Mult(U) Multisets over U

 $A \in Mult(U)$  iff  $A : U \to \mathbb{N}$  with  $\{u \mid A(u) > 0\}$  finite.

Operations:  $\cup$ ,  $\cap$ , -

$$(A \cup B)(u) := A(u) + B(u)$$
  
 $(A \cap B)(u) := min\{A(u), B(u)\}$   
 $(A - B)(u) := max\{0, A(u) - B(u)\}$ 

Explicit notation:

$$U = \{a, b, c\} \text{ e.g. } A = \{\{a, a, a, b, c, c\}\}, B = \{\{c, c, c\}\}\}$$



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction Systems  Term Rewriting Systems

Transformation with the inference system

### Multiset ordering

**Definition 8.22.** Extension of (U, >) to  $(Mult(U), \gg)$ 

$$A \gg B$$
 iff there are  $X, Y \in Mult(U)$  with  $\emptyset \neq X \subseteq A$  and  $B = (A - X) \cup Y$ , so that  $\forall y \in Y \exists x \in X \ x > y$ 

Properties:

- $(1) > PO \rightsquigarrow PO$
- (2)  $\{m_1\} \gg \{m_2\}$  iff  $m_1 > m_2$
- $(3) > total \rightarrow \gg total$
- (4)  $A \gg B \rightsquigarrow A \cup C \gg B \cup C$
- (5)  $B \subset A \rightsquigarrow A \gg B$
- (6) > noetherian iff ≫ noetherian

Example: a < b < c then  $B \gg A$ 

#### 4 D > 4 B > 4 B > 4 B > 4

### Construction of the proof ordering

Reduction Systems

Construction of the proof ordering

Let  $(\vdash, \rightarrow)$  be given and > a noetherian PO on U with  $\rightarrow \subset >$ Assign to each "atomic" proof a complexity

$$c(u * v) = \begin{cases} \{u\} & \text{if } u \to v \\ \{v\} & \text{if } u \leftarrow v \\ \{\{u, v\}\} & \text{if } u \vdash v \end{cases}$$

Extend this complexity to "composed" proofs through

$$c(P(u)) = \emptyset$$
  
 
$$c(P(u, v)) = \{ \{ c(u_i *_{i+1} u_{i+1}) \mid i = 0, \dots n-1 \} \}$$

Notice:  $c(P(u, v)) \in Mult(Mult(U))$ 

Define ordering on proofs through

$$P >_{\mathcal{P}} Q$$
 iff  $c(P) \gg c(Q)$ 

### Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques Reduction Systems Term Rewriting Systems Construction of the proof ordering

# Construction of the proof ordering

**Fact** :  $>_{\mathcal{P}}$  is notherian proof ordering!

Which proof steps are large and which small?

Consider:

(a) 
$$P_1 = x \leftarrow u \rightarrow y$$
,  $P_2 = x \vdash y$ 

$$c(P_1) = \{\{\{u\}, \{u\}\}\}\} \implies \{\{x, y\}\} = c(P_2) \text{ since } u > x \text{ and } u > y \\ \sim P_1 >_{\mathcal{P}} P_2$$

analogously for

(b) 
$$P_1 = x \vdash y$$
,  $P_2 = x \rightarrow y$ 

(c) 
$$P_1 = u \vdash v$$
,  $P_2 = u \vdash w \leftarrow v$ 

(d) 
$$P_1 = u \vdash v, P_2 = u \rightarrow w \leftarrow v$$

### Fair Deductions in $\mathcal{P}$

**Definition 8.23** (Fair deduction). Let  $(\vdash_i, \rightarrow_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$  be a  $\mathcal{P}$ -deduction. Let

$$\vdash \vdash^{\infty} = \bigcup_{i>0} \bigcap_{j>i} \vdash \vdash_i and \rightarrow^{\infty} = \bigcup_{i>0} \rightarrow_i.$$

The  $\mathcal{P}$ -Deduction is called fair, in case

- (1)  $\vdash \vdash^{\infty} = \emptyset$  and
- (2) If  $x \stackrel{\infty}{\leftarrow} u \stackrel{\infty}{\rightarrow} y$ , then there exists  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  with  $x \vdash_k y$ .

**Lemma 8.24.** Let  $(\vdash_i, \rightarrow_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$  be a fair  $\mathcal{P}$ -deduction

- (a) For each proof P in  $(\vdash_i, \rightarrow_i)$  there is an equivalent proof P' in  $(\vdash_{i+1}, \rightarrow_{i+1})$  with  $P \geq_{\mathcal{P}} P'$ .
- (b) Let  $i \in \mathbb{N}$  and P proof in  $(\vdash_i, \rightarrow_i)$  which is not a V-proof. Then there exists a j > i and an equivalent proof P' in  $(\vdash_i, \rightarrow_i)$  with  $P >_{\mathcal{P}} P'$ .



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

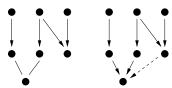
Reduction Systems  Term Rewriting Systems

Construction of the proof ordering

#### Main result

**Theorem 8.25.** Let  $(\vdash_i, \rightarrow_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$  a fair  $\mathcal{P}$ -Deduction and  $\rightarrow = \rightarrow^{\infty}$ . Then

- (a) If  $u \sim v$ , then there exists an  $i \in \mathbb{N}$  with  $u \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}_i \circ i \stackrel{*}{\leftarrow} v$
- (b)  $\rightarrow$  is convergent and  $\stackrel{*}{\leftrightarrow} = \sim$



#### 4 ロ ト 4 回 ト 4 至 ト 4 至 ト 三 連

# Term Rewriting Systems

#### Goal: Operationalization of specifications and implementation of functional programming languages

Given spec = (sig, E) when is  $T_{spec}$  a computable algebra?

$$(T_{spec})_s = \{[t]_{=_E} : t \in \mathit{Term}(sig)_s\}$$

 $T_{\rm spec}$  is a computable Algebra if there is a computable function

 $rep: Term(sig) \rightarrow Term(sig)$ , with  $rep(t) \in [t]_{=_F}$  the "unique" representative" in its equivalence class.

Paradigm: Choose as representative the minimal object in the equivalence class with respect to an ordering.

$$f(x_1,...,x_n): ((T_{spec})_{s_1} \times ... (T_{spec})_{s_n}) \to (T_{spec})_s$$
  
 $f([r_1],...,[r_n]):= [rep(f(rep(r_1),...,(rep(r_n)))]$ 

# Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique Reduction Systems Term Rewriting Systems

### Term Rewriting Systems

#### **Definition 9.1.** Rules, rule sets, reduction relation

- ▶ Sets of variables in terms: For  $t \in Term_s(F, V)$  let V(t) be the set of the variables in t (Recursive definition! always finite) *Notice:*  $V(t) = \emptyset$  *iff* t *is ground term.*
- ► A rule is a pair  $(I,r), I, r \in Term_s(F, V) \ (s \in S) \ with \ Var(r) \subseteq Var(I)$ Write:  $I \rightarrow r$
- ► A rule system R is a set of rules. R defines a reduction relation  $\rightarrow_R$  over Term(F, V) by:  $t_1 \rightarrow_R t_2$  iff  $\exists I \rightarrow r \in R, p \in O(t_1), \sigma$  substitution:  $t_1|_p = \sigma(I) \wedge t_2 = t_1[\sigma(r)]_p$
- ▶ Let  $(Term(F, V), \rightarrow_R)$  be the reduction system defined by R (term rewriting system).
- ▶ A rule system R defines a congruence  $=_R$  on Term(F, V) just by considering the rules as equations.

## Term Rewriting Systems

**Goal:** Transform E in R, so that  $=_E = \stackrel{*}{\longleftrightarrow}_R$  holds and  $\to_R$  has "sufficiently" good termination and confluence properties. For instance convergent or confluent. Often it is enough when these properties hold "only" on the set of ground terms.

#### Notice:

- ▶ The condition  $V(r) \subseteq V(I)$  in the rule  $I \rightarrow r$  is necessary for the termination. If neither  $V(r) \subseteq V(I)$  nor  $V(I) \subseteq V(r)$  in an equation I = r of a specification, we have used superfluous variables in some function's definition.
- ightharpoonup is compatible with substitutions and term replacement. i.e. From  $s \to_R t$  also  $\sigma(s) \to_R \sigma(t)$  and  $u[s]_p \to_R u[t]_p$
- ► In particular:



## Matching substitution

**Definition 9.2.** Let  $I, t \in Term_s(F, V)$ . A substitution  $\sigma$  is called a match (matching substitution) of I on t, if  $\sigma(I) = t$ .

### Consequence 9.3. Properties:

- $\blacktriangleright$   $\forall$   $\sigma$  substitution  $O(I) \subseteq O(\sigma(I))$
- ▶  $\exists \sigma : \sigma(I) = t$  iff for  $\sigma$  defined through  $\forall u \ O(I) : I|_{u} = x \in V \leadsto u \in O(t) \land \sigma(x) = t|_{u}$  $\sigma$  is a substitution  $\wedge \sigma(I) = t$ .
- $\triangleright$  If there is such a substitution, then it is unique on V(I). The existence and if possible calculation are effective.
- ▶ It is decidable whether t is reducible with rule  $l \rightarrow r$ .
- ▶ If R is finite, then  $\Delta(s) = \{t : s \rightarrow_R t\}$  is finite and computable.

## Reduction Systems

Term Rewriting Systems

Principles

## **Examples**

#### **Example 9.4.** Integer numbers

$$sig: 0: \rightarrow int$$
  
 $s, p: int \rightarrow int$   
 $if 0: int, int, int \rightarrow int$   
 $F: int, int \rightarrow int$   
 $eqns: 1:: p(0) = 0$   
 $2:: p(s(x)) = x$   
 $3:: if 0(0, x, y) = x$   
 $4:: if 0(s(z), x, y) = y$   
 $5:: F(x, y) = if 0(x, 0, F(p(x), F(x, y)))$ 

Interpretation:  $\langle \mathbb{N}, ..., \rangle$  spec- Algebra with functions  $O_{\mathbb{N}}=0$ ,  $s_{\mathbb{N}}=\lambda n$ . n+1.  $p_{\mathbb{N}} = \lambda n$ , if n = 0 then 0 else n - 1 fi if  $0_N = \lambda i$ , i, k. if i = 0 then i else k fi  $F_{\mathbb{N}} = \lambda m, n. 0$ 

Orient the equations from left to right \simple rules R (variable condition is fulfilled).

Is R terminating? Not with a syntactical ordering, since the left side is contained in the right side.



## Example (Cont.)

### Reduction sequence:

$$F(s(0), 0) \to_{5} if 0(s(0), 0, F(\underbrace{p(s(0))}_{2}, \underbrace{F(s(0), 0))}_{5}))$$

$$\to_{4} \underbrace{F(\underbrace{p(s(0))}_{5}, \underbrace{F(s(0), 0)}_{5})}_{5}$$

$$\to_{5} if 0(0, 0, F(\underbrace{p(0)}_{5}, F(\underbrace{p(0)}_{5}, F(\underbrace{s(0), 0)}_{5})))) \to_{3} 0$$

## Equivalence

**Definition 9.5.** Let spec = (sig, E), spec' = (sig, E') be specifications. They are equivalent in case  $=_E = =_{E'}$ , i.e.,  $T_{spec} = T_{spec'}$ . A rule system R over sig is equivalent to E, in case  $=_E = \stackrel{*}{\longleftrightarrow}_R$ .

**Notice:** If R is finite, convergent, equivalent to E, then  $=_E$  is decidable

$$s =_F t$$
 iff  $s \downarrow = t \downarrow$  i.e., identical NF

For functional programs and computations in  $T_{spec}$  ground convergence is suficient, i.e., convergence on ground terms.

Problems: Decide whether

- R noetherian (ground noetherian)
- ► R confluent (ground confluent)
- ▶ How can we transform E in an equivalent R with these properties?



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

293

Reduction Systems

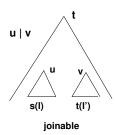
Term Rewriting Systems 

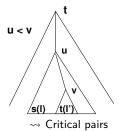
Principle

## Decidability questions

For finite ground term-rewriting-systems the problems are decidable.

For terminating systems deciding local confluence is sufficient, i.e., out of  $t_1 \leftarrow t \rightarrow t_2$  prove  $t_1 \downarrow t_2 \rightsquigarrow$  confluent.







### Critical pairs

Critical pairs, unification

Consider the group axioms:

$$\underbrace{(x'\cdot y')\cdot z}_{l_1}\to x'\cdot (y'\cdot z) \text{ and } \underbrace{x\cdot x^{-1}}_{l_2}\to 1.$$

"Overlappings" (Superpositions)

$$(x \cdot x^{-1}) \cdot z \qquad (x \cdot y) \cdot (x \cdot y)^{-1}$$

$$1 \cdot z \qquad x \cdot (x^{-1} \cdot z) \qquad 1 \qquad x \cdot (y \cdot (x \cdot y)^{-1})$$

- $ightharpoonup I_1|_1$  is "unifiable" with  $I_2$  with substitution  $\sigma :: \{x' \leftarrow x, y' \leftarrow x^{-1}, x \leftarrow x\} \leadsto \sigma(h_1|_1) = \sigma(h_2)$
- $\triangleright$   $l_1$  "unifiable" with  $l_2$  with substitution  $\sigma: \{x' \leftarrow x, y' \leftarrow y, z \leftarrow (x \cdot y)^{-1}, x \leftarrow x \cdot y\} \rightsquigarrow \sigma(I_1) = \sigma(I_2)$

Term Rewriting Systems 

## Subsumption, unification

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

**Definition 9.6.** Subsumption ordering on terms:

 $s \prec t$  iff  $\exists \sigma$  substitution :  $\sigma(s)$  subterm of t

 $s \approx t \text{ iff } (s \leq t \land t \leq s)$ 

 $s \succ t \text{ iff } (t \prec s \land \neg (s \prec t))$ 

 $\succeq$  is noetherian partial ordering over Term(F, V) Proof!.

Notice:

Reduction Systems

Critical pairs, unification

$$O(\sigma(t)) = O(t) \cup \bigcup_{w \in O(t): t|_{w} = x \in V} \{wv : v \in O(\sigma(x))\}$$

Compatibility properties:

$$t|_{u}=t'\leadsto\sigma(t)|_{u}=\sigma(t')$$

$$t|_{u} = x \in V \leadsto \sigma(t)|_{uv} = \sigma(x)|_{v} \quad (v \in O(\sigma(x)))$$
  
$$\sigma(t)[\sigma(t')]_{u} = \sigma(t[t']_{u}) \text{ for } u \in O(t)$$

**Definition 9.7.**  $s, t \in Term(F, V)$  are unifiable iff there is a substitution  $\sigma$  with  $\sigma(s) = \sigma(t)$ .  $\sigma$  is called a unifier of s and t.

**Definition 9.8.** Let  $V' \subseteq V, \sigma, \tau$  be substitutions.

- ▶  $\sigma \leq \tau$  (V') iff  $\exists \rho$  substitution :  $\rho \circ \sigma|_{V'} = \tau|_{V'}$ Quote:  $\sigma$  is more general than  $\tau$  over V'
- $ightharpoonup \sigma pprox au (V') \text{ iff } \sigma \leq \tau (V') \land \tau \leq \sigma (V')$
- ▶ Notice: ≺ is noetherian partial ordering on the substitutions.

**Question:** Let s, t be unifiable. Is there a most general unifier mgu(s, t) over  $V = Var(s) \cup Var(t)$ ?

i.e.. for any unifier  $\sigma$  of s, t always  $mgu(s,t) \leq \sigma(V)$  holds.

Is mgu(s, t) unique? (up to variable renaming).



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Critical pairs, unification

## Unification's problem and its solution

#### Definition 9.9.

- ▶ A unification's problem is given by a set  $E = \{s_i \stackrel{?}{=} t_i : i = 1, ..., n\}$  of equations.
- ▶  $\sigma$  is called a solution (or a unifier) in case that  $\sigma(s_i) = \sigma(t_i)$  for i = 1, ..., n.
- ▶ If  $\tau \succeq \sigma$  (Var(E)) holds for each solution  $\tau$  of E, then  $mgu(E) := \sigma$  most general solution or most general unifier.
- Let Sol(E) be the set of the solutions of E. E and E' are equivalent, if Sol(E) = Sol(E').
- ► E' is in solved form, in case that  $E' = \{x_i \stackrel{?}{=} t_i : x_i \neq x_i \ (i \neq j), \ x_i \notin Var(t_i) \ (1 \leq i \leq j \leq m)\}$
- ▶ E' is a solved form for E, if E' is in solved form and equivalent to E with  $Var(E') \subseteq Var(E)$ .

## **Examples**

Critical pairs, unification

#### Example 9.10. Consider

► 
$$s = f(x, g(x, a))$$
  $\stackrel{?}{=}$   $f(g(y, y), z) = t$   
 $\Rightarrow x \stackrel{?}{=} g(y, y)$   $g(x, a) \stackrel{?}{=} z$  split  
 $\Rightarrow x \stackrel{?}{=} g(y, y)$   $g(g(y, y), a) \stackrel{?}{=} z$  merge  
 $\Rightarrow \sigma :: x \leftarrow g(y, y)$   $z \leftarrow g(g(y, y), a)$   $y \leftarrow y$ 

- $f(x,a) \stackrel{?}{=} g(a,z)$  unsolvable (not unifiable).
- $\rightarrow x \stackrel{?}{=} f(x,y)$  unsolvable, since f(x,y) not x free.
- ▶  $x \stackrel{?}{=} f(a, y) \rightsquigarrow$  solution  $\sigma :: x \leftarrow f(a, y)$  is the most general solution.

#### 

## Inference system for the unification

**Definition 9.11.** Calculus **UNIFY**. Let  $\sigma = be$  the binding set.

(1) Erase 
$$\frac{(E \cup \{s \stackrel{?}{=} s\}, \sigma)}{(E, \sigma)}$$

(2) Split (Decompose) 
$$\frac{(E \cup \{f(s_1,...,s_m) \stackrel{?}{=} g(t_1,...,t_n)\},\sigma)}{\frac{f}{f}(unsolvable)} \text{ if } f \neq g$$

$$\frac{(E \cup \{f(s_1,...,s_m) \stackrel{?}{=} f(t_1,...,t_m)\},\sigma)}{(E \cup \{s_i \stackrel{?}{=} t_i : i = 1,...,m\},\sigma)}$$

(3) Merge (Solve) 
$$\frac{(E \cup \{x \stackrel{?}{=} t\}, \sigma)}{(\tau(E), \sigma \cup \tau)} \text{ if } x \notin Var(t), \tau = \{x \stackrel{?}{=} t\}$$
"occur check" 
$$\frac{(E \cup \{x \stackrel{?}{=} t\}, \sigma)}{f \text{ (unsolvable)}} \text{ if } x \in Var(t) \land x \neq t$$

## Unification algorithms

Unification algorithms based on UNIFY start always with  $(E_0, S_0) :=$  $(E,\emptyset)$  and return a sequence  $(E_0,S_0)\vdash_{UNIFY}...\vdash_{UNIFY}(E_n,S_n)$ They are successful in case they end with  $E_n = \emptyset$ , unsuccessful in case they end with  $S_n = \mathcal{L}$ .  $S_n$  defines a substitution  $\sigma$  which represents  $Sol(S_n)$  and consequently also Sol(E).

#### Lemma 9.12. Correctness.

Each sequence  $(E_0, S_0) \vdash_{UNIFY} ... \vdash_{UNIFY} (E_n, S_n)$  terminates: either with 4 (unsolvable, not unifiable) or with  $(\emptyset, S)$  and S is a solved form for E.

Notice: Representations in solved form can be quite different (Complexity!!)

$$s \stackrel{?}{=} f(x_1, ..., x_n)$$
  $t \stackrel{?}{=} f(g(x_0, x_0), ..., g(x_{n-1}, x_{n-1}))$   
 $S = \{x_i \stackrel{?}{=} g(x_{i-1}, x_{i-1}) : i = 1, ..., n\}$  and  
 $S_1 = \{x_{i+1} \stackrel{?}{=} t_i : t_0 = g(x_0, x_0), t_{i+1} = g(t_i, t_i) \ i = 0, ..., n-1\}$  are both in solved form. The size of  $t_i$  grows exponentially with  $i$ .

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Term Rewriting Systems

Reduction Systems Critical pairs, unification

## Example

#### **Example 9.13.** Execution:

$$f(x,g(a,b)) \stackrel{?}{=} f(g(y,b),x)$$

$$E_{i} \qquad S_{i} \qquad rule$$

$$f(x,g(a,b)) \stackrel{?}{=} f(g(y,b),x) \qquad \emptyset$$

$$x \stackrel{?}{=} g(y,b), x \stackrel{?}{=} g(a,b) \qquad \emptyset \qquad split$$

$$g(y,b) \stackrel{?}{=} g(a,b) \qquad x \stackrel{?}{=} g(a,b) \qquad solve$$

$$y \stackrel{?}{=} a,b \stackrel{?}{=} b \qquad x \stackrel{?}{=} g(a,b), y \stackrel{?}{=} a \qquad solve$$

$$b \stackrel{?}{=} b \qquad x \stackrel{?}{=} g(a,b), y \stackrel{?}{=} a \qquad delete$$

Solution:  $mgu = \sigma = \{x \leftarrow g(a, b), y \leftarrow a\}$ 

#### < ロ ト → 付き → → き ト → ま → り Q (~)

### Critical pairs - Local confluence

**Definition 9.14.** Let R be a rule system and  $l_1 \rightarrow r_1, l_2 \rightarrow r_2 \in R$  with  $V(l_1) \cap V(l_2) = \emptyset$  (renaming of variables if necessary,  $l_1 \approx l_2$  resp.  $l_1 \rightarrow r_1 \approx l_2 \rightarrow r_2$  are allowed).

Let  $u \in O(l_1)$  with  $l_1|_{u} \notin V$  s.t.  $\sigma = mgu(l_1|_{u}, l_2)$  exists.

 $\sigma(l_1)$  is called then a overlap (superposition) of  $l_2 \rightarrow r_2$  in  $l_1 \rightarrow r_1$  and  $(\sigma(r_1), \sigma(l_1[r_2]_u))$  is the associated critical pair to the overlap  $l_1 \rightarrow r_1, l_2 \rightarrow r_2, u \in O(l_1)$ , provided that  $\sigma(r_1) \neq \sigma(l_1[r_2]_u)$ .

Let CP(R) be the set of all the critical pairs that can be constructed with rules of R.

**Notice:** The overlaps and consequently the set of critical pairs is unique up to renaming of the variables.



### **Examples**

Reduction Systems

Local confluence

#### Example 9.15. Consider

▶ 
$$f(f(\underline{x},\underline{y}),z) \rightarrow f(x,f(y,z))$$
  $f(\underline{f(x',y')},\underline{z'}) \rightarrow f(x',f(y',z'))$  unifiable with  $x \leftarrow f(x',y'), y \leftarrow z'$ 

$$t_1 = f(f(x', y'), f(z', z))$$

$$f(f(x', y'), z', z') = t_2$$

▶ 
$$t = f(x, g(x, a)) \rightarrow h(x)$$
  $h(x') \rightarrow g(x', x'), t|_1 = t|_{21} = x$  no critical pairs. Consider variable overlaps:

$$f(h(z), g(h(z), a)))$$

$$t_1 = h(h(z))$$

$$f(g(z, z), g(h(z), a)) = t_2$$

$$f(g(z, z), g(g(z, z), a))$$

$$h(g(z, z))$$

## **Properties**

▶ Let  $\sigma, \tau$  be substitutions,  $x \in V$ ,  $\sigma(y) = \tau(y)$  for  $y \neq x$  and  $\sigma(x) \to_R \tau(x)$ . Then for each term t holds:

$$\sigma(t) \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}_R \tau(t)$$

▶ Let  $l_1 \rightarrow r_1, l_2 \rightarrow r_2$  be rules,  $u \in O(l_1), l_1|_{u} = x \in V$ . Let  $\sigma(x)|_{w} = \sigma(l_{2})$ , i.e.,  $\sigma(l_{2})$  is introduced by  $\sigma(x)$ .  $t_1 \downarrow_R t_2$  holds for

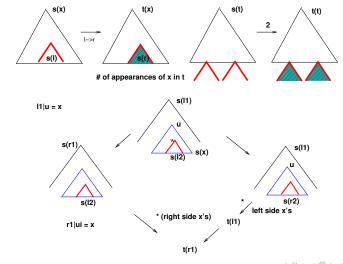
$$t_1 := \sigma(r_1) \leftarrow \sigma(l_1) \rightarrow \sigma(l_1)[\sigma(r_2)]_{uw} =: t_2$$

Lemma 9.16. Critical-Pair Lemma of Knuth/Bendix Let R be a rule system. Then the following holds:

from  $t_1 \leftarrow_R t \rightarrow_R t_2$  either  $t_1 \downarrow_R t_2$  or  $t_1 \leftrightarrow_{CP(R)} t_2$  hold.



### **Proofs**



### Confluence test

Reduction Systems

Local confluence

**Theorem 9.17.** Main result: Let R be a rule system.

- ▶ *R* is locally confluent iff all the pairs  $(t_1, t_2) \in CP(R)$  are joinable.
- ▶ If R is terminating, then: *R* confluent iff  $(t_1, t_2) \in CP(R) \rightsquigarrow t_1 \downarrow t_2$ .
- ▶ Let R be linear (i.e., for  $I, r \in I \rightarrow r \in R$  variables appear at most once). If  $CP(R) = \emptyset$ , then R is confluent.

#### **Example 9.18.**

▶ Let  $R = \{f(x,x) \rightarrow a, f(x,s(x)) \rightarrow b, a \rightarrow s(a)\}.$ R is locally confluent, but not confluent:

$$a \leftarrow f(a, a) \rightarrow f(a, s(a)) \rightarrow b$$

but not a \( \) b. R is neither terminating nor left-linear.

	<□ > < <b>□</b> > < <b>፱</b> > < <b>፱</b> >	Æ	990
Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques			307
Reduction Systems 000000000000000000000000000000000000	Term Rewriting Systems		
Local confluence			

## Example (Cont.)

 $ightharpoonup R = \{f(f(x)) \rightarrow g(x)\}\$  $t_1 = g(f(x)) \leftarrow f(f(f(x))) \rightarrow f(g(x)) = t_2$ 

It doesn't hold  $t_1 \downarrow_R t_2 \rightsquigarrow R$  not confluent.

Add rule  $t_1 \rightarrow t_2$  to R.  $R_1$  is equivalent to R, terminating and confluent.

$$f(g(f(x))) \qquad g(g(x))$$

$$f(f(g(x))) \qquad f(f(g(x)))$$

- $ightharpoonup R = \{x + 0 \rightarrow x, x + s(y) \rightarrow s(x + y)\},$  linear without critical pairs → confluent.
- $R = \{ f(x) \rightarrow a, f(x) \rightarrow g(f(x)), g(f(x)) \rightarrow f(h(x)), g(f(x)) \rightarrow b \}$ is locally confluent but not confluent.

### Confluence without Termination

**Definition 9.19.**  $\epsilon - \epsilon$  - Properties. Let  $\stackrel{\epsilon}{\rightarrow} = \stackrel{0}{\rightarrow} \cup \stackrel{1}{\rightarrow}$ .

- ightharpoonup R is called  $\epsilon \epsilon$  closed, in case that for each critical pair  $(t_1,t_2) \in CP(R)$  there exists a t with  $t_1 \stackrel{\epsilon}{\longrightarrow} t \stackrel{\epsilon}{\longleftarrow} t_2$ .

#### Consequence 9.20.

- $ightharpoonup 
  ightharpoonup \epsilon \epsilon \ confluent \ 
  ightharpoonup strong-confluent.$
- $ightharpoonup R \epsilon \epsilon \ closed \implies R \epsilon \epsilon \ confluent$  $R = \{f(x,x) \rightarrow a, f(x,g(x)) \rightarrow b, c \rightarrow g(c)\}. CP(R) = \emptyset, i.e.$  $R \ \epsilon - \epsilon \ closed \ but \ a \leftarrow f(c,c) \rightarrow f(c,g(c)) \rightarrow b, \ i.e.. \ R \ not$ confluent 4.
- ▶ If R is linear and  $\epsilon \epsilon$  closed , then R is strong-confluent, thus confluent (prove that R is  $\epsilon - \epsilon$  confluent).

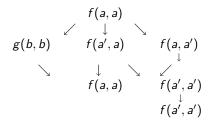
These conditions are unfortunately too restricting for programming.



## Example

**Example 9.21.** R left linear  $\epsilon - \epsilon$  closed is not sufficient:  $R = \{f(a, a) \rightarrow g(b, b), a \rightarrow a', f(a', x) \rightarrow f(x, x), f(x, a') \rightarrow f(x, x), a'\}$  $g(b,b) \rightarrow f(a,a), b \rightarrow b', g(b',x) \rightarrow g(x,x), g(x,b') \rightarrow g(x,x)$ 

It holds  $f(a', a') \stackrel{*}{\longleftrightarrow} g(b', b')$  but not  $f(a', a') \downarrow_R g(b', b')$ . R left linear  $\epsilon - \epsilon$  closed:



#### < ロ ト → 付き → → き ト → ま → り Q (~)

### Parallel reduction

**Notice:** Let  $\rightarrow$ ,  $\Rightarrow$  with  $\stackrel{*}{\rightarrow} = \stackrel{*}{\Rightarrow}$ . (Often:  $\rightarrow \subset \Rightarrow \subset \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}$ ). Then  $\rightarrow$  is confluent iff  $\Rightarrow$  confluent.

**Definition 9.22.** Let R be a rule system.

- ▶ The parallel reduction,  $\mapsto_R$ , is defined through  $t \mapsto_R t'$  iff  $\exists U \subset O(t) : \forall u_i, u_i (u_i \neq u_i \leadsto u_i | u_i) \ \exists l_i \to r_i \in R, \sigma_i \text{ with } t|_{u_i} =$  $\sigma_i(I_i) :: t' = t[\sigma_i(r_i)]_{u_i}(u_i \in U) \quad (t[u_1 \leftarrow \sigma_1(r_1)]...t[u_n \leftarrow \sigma_1(r_n)]).$
- ▶ A critical pair of  $R: (\sigma(r_1), \sigma(l_1[r_2]_u)$  is parallel 0-joinable in case that  $\sigma(I_1[r_2]_{\mu}) \mapsto_R \sigma(r_1)$ .
- ▶ R is parallel 0-closed in case that each critical pair of R is parallel 0-joinable.

Properties:  $\mapsto_R$  is stable and monotone. It holds  $\mapsto_R^* = \xrightarrow{*}_R$  and consequently, if  $\mapsto_R$  is confluent then  $\to_R$  too.



### Parallel reduction

**Theorem 9.23.** If R is left-linear and parallel 0-closed, then  $\mapsto_R$  is strong-confluent, thus confluent, and consequently R is also confluent.

#### Consequence 9.24.

- ▶ If R fulfills the O'Donnel condition, then R is confluent. O'Donnel's condition: R left-linear,  $CP(R) = \emptyset$ , R left-sequential (Redexes are unambiguous when reading the terms from left to right:  $f(g(x, a), y) \rightarrow 0, g(b, c) \rightarrow 1$  has not this property). By regrouping of the arguments, the property can frequently be achieved, for instance  $f(g(a,x),y) \rightarrow 0, g(b,c) \rightarrow 1$
- ▶ Orthogonal systems:: R left-linear and  $CP(R) = \emptyset$ , so R confluent. (In the literature denominated also as regular systems).
- ▶ Variations: R is strongly-closed, in case that for each critical pair (s,t) there are terms u,v with  $s \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow} u \stackrel{\leq 1}{\longleftarrow} t$  and  $s \stackrel{\leq 1}{\longrightarrow} v \stackrel{*}{\longleftarrow} t$ . R linear and strongly-closed, so R strong-confluent.

Reduction Systems

## Consequences

- ▶ Does confluence follow from  $CP(R) = \emptyset$ ? No.  $R = \{f(x,x) \rightarrow a, g(x) \rightarrow f(x,g(x)), b \rightarrow g(b)\}.$ Consider  $g(b) \to f(b, g(b)) \to f(g(b), g(b)) \to a$ "Outermost" reduction.  $g(b) \to g(g(b)) \stackrel{*}{\to} g(a) \to f(a,g(a))$  not joinable.
- ▶ Regular systems can be non terminating:  $\{f(x,b)\to d, a\to b, c\to c\}$ . Evidently  $CP=\emptyset$ .  $f(c,a) \rightarrow f(c,b) \rightarrow d$  $f(c,a) \to f(c,b)$ . Notice that f(c,a) has a normal form.  $\rightsquigarrow$ Reduction strategies that are normalizing or that deliver shortest reduction sequences.
- A context is a term with "holes"  $\square$ , e.g.  $f(g(\square, s(0)), \square, h(\square))$  as "tree pattern" (pattern) for rule  $f(g(x,s(0)),y,h(z)) \rightarrow x$ . The holes can be filled freely. Sequentiality is defined using this notion.

Confluence without Termination

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Term Rewriting Systems 

Reduction Systems

### Termination-Criteria

**Theorem 9.25.** R is terminating iff there is a noetherian partial ordering  $\succ$  over the ground terms Term(F), that is monotone, so that  $\sigma(I) \succ \sigma(r)$ holds for each rule  $I \rightarrow r \in R$  and ground substitution  $\sigma$ .

**Proof:**  $\curvearrowright$  Define  $s \succ t$  iff  $s \stackrel{+}{\rightarrow} t$   $(s, t \in Term(F))$  $\curvearrowleft$  Asume that  $\rightarrow_R$  not terminating,  $t_0 \rightarrow t_1 \rightarrow ...(V(t_i) \subseteq V(t_0))$ . Let  $\sigma$  be a ground substitution with  $V(t_0) \subset D(\sigma)$ , then  $\sigma(t_0) \succ \sigma(t_1) \succ ... \cancel{z}$ . Problem: infinite test.

**Definition 9.26.** A reduction ordering is partial ordering ≻ over Term(F, V) with (i)  $\succ$  is noetherian (ii)  $\succ$  is stable and (iii)  $\succ$  is monotone.

**Theorem 9.27.** R is noetherian iff there exists a reduction ordering  $\succ$ with  $l \succ r$  for every  $l \rightarrow r \in R$ 

**Notice:** There are no total reduction orderings for terms with variables...

$$x \succ y? \rightsquigarrow \sigma(x) \succ \sigma(y)$$

f(x,y) > f(y,x)? commutativity cannot be oriented.

Examples for reduction orderings:

Knuth-Bendix ordering: Weight for each function symbol and precedence over F.

Recursive path ordering (RPO): precedence over F is recursively extended to paths (words) in the terms that are to be compared.

Lexicographic path ordering (LPO), polynomial interpretations, etc.

$$f(f(g(x))) = f(h(x)) \quad f(f(x)) = g(h(g(x))) \quad f(h(x)) = h(g(x))$$
 $KB \rightarrow I(f) = 3 \quad I(g) = 2 \rightarrow I(h) = 1 \rightarrow KPO \leftarrow g > h > f \leftarrow KPO$ 

Confluence modulo equivalence relation (e.g. AC):

$$R :: f(x,x) \to g(x)$$
  $G :: \{(a,b)\}$   $g(a) \leftarrow f(a,a) \sim f(a,b)$  but not  $g(a) \downarrow_{\sim} f(a,b)$ .

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique Reduction Systems Term Rewriting Systems Knuth-Bendix Completion

## Knuth-Bendix Completion method

**Input:** E set of equations,  $\succ$  reduction ordering,  $R = \emptyset$ .

**Repeat** while E not empty

- (1) Remove t = s of E with t > s,  $R := R \cup \{t \rightarrow s\}$  else abort
- (2) Bring the right side of the rules to normal form with R
- (3) Extend E with every normalized critical pair generated by  $t \rightarrow s$  with
- (4) Remove all the rules from R, whose left side is properly larger than tw.r. to the subsumption ordering.
- (5) Use R to normalize both sides of equations of E. Remove identities.

Output: 1) Termination with R convergent, equivalent to E. 2) Abortion 3) not termination (it runs infinitely).

## Examples for Knuth-Bendix-Procedure

#### Example 9.28.

- ► SRS::  $\Sigma = \{a, b, c\}, E = \{a^2 = \lambda, b^2 = \lambda, ab = c\}$   $u < v \text{ iff } |u| < |v| \text{ or } |u| = |v| \text{ and } u <_{lex} v \text{ with } a <_{lex} b <_{lex} c$   $E_0 = \{a^2 = \lambda, b^2 = \lambda, ab = c\}, R_0 = \emptyset$   $E_1 = \{b^2 = \lambda, ab = c\}, R_1 = \{a^2 \to \lambda\}, CP_1 = \emptyset$   $E_2 = \{ab = c\}, R_2 = \{a^2 \to \lambda, b^2 \to \lambda\}, CP_2 = \emptyset$ 
  - $R_3 = \{a^2 \rightarrow \lambda, b^2 \rightarrow \lambda, ab \rightarrow c\}, NCP_3 = \{(b, ac), (a, cb)\}$
  - $R_3 = \{a^2 \rightarrow \lambda, b^2 \rightarrow \lambda, ab \rightarrow c\}, NCP_3 = \{(b, ac), (a, cb)\}$  $E_3 = \{b = ac, a = cb\}$
  - $\textit{R}_{4} = \{\textit{a}^{2} \rightarrow \lambda, \textit{b}^{2} \rightarrow \lambda, \textit{ab} \rightarrow \textit{c}, \textit{ac} \rightarrow \textit{b}\}, \textit{NCP}_{4} = \emptyset, \textit{E}_{4} = \{\textit{a} = \textit{cb}\}$
  - $R_5 = \{a^2 \rightarrow \lambda, b^2 \rightarrow \lambda, ab \rightarrow c, ac \rightarrow b, cb \rightarrow a\}, NCP_5 = \emptyset, E_5 = \emptyset$



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Term Rewriting Systems

Knuth-Bendix Completion

## Examples for Knuth-Bendix-Completion

- ▶  $E = \{ffg(x) = h(x), ff(x) = x, fh(x) = g(x)\}$  >: KBO(3, 2, 1)  $R_0 = \emptyset, E_0 = E$   $R_1 = \{ffg(x) \rightarrow h(x)\}, KP_1 = \emptyset.E_1 = \{ff(x) = x, fh(x) = g(x)\}$   $R_2 = \{ffg(x) \rightarrow h(x), ff(x) \rightarrow x\}, NKP_2 = \{(g(x), h(x))\},$   $E_2 = \{fh(x) = g(x), g(x) = h(x)\}, R_2 = \{ff(x) \rightarrow x\}$   $R_3 = \{ff(x) \rightarrow x, fh(x) \rightarrow g(x)\}, NKP_3 = \{(h(x), fg(x))\}, E_3 = \{g(x) = h(x), h(x) = fg(x)\}$   $R_4 = \{ff(x) \rightarrow x, fh(x) \rightarrow h(x), g(x) \rightarrow h(x)\}, NKP_3 = \emptyset, E_4 = \emptyset$ ▶  $E = \{fgf(x) = gfg(x)\}$  >: LL :: f > g
- ►  $E = \{fgf(x) = gfg(x)\}$  >: LL :: f > g  $R_0 = \emptyset, E_0 = E$   $R_1 = \{fgf(x) \rightarrow gfg(x)\}, NKP_1 = \{(gfggf(x), fggfg(x))\}, E_1 = \{gfggf(x) = fggfg(x)\}$  $R_1 = \{fgf(x) \rightarrow gfg(x), fggfg(x) \rightarrow gfggf(x)\}, NKP_2 = \{(gfggfggfg(x), fggfggfg(x), ...\}...$

#### 

### Refined Inference system for Completion

**Definition 9.29.** Let > be a noetherian PO over Term(F, V). The inference system  $\mathcal{P}_{TES}$  is composed by the following rules:

- $(1) \ \, \frac{ \left( E \cup \{s \doteq t\}, R \right) }{ \left( E, R \cup \{s \rightarrow t\} \right) } \ \, \text{in case that } s > t$
- (2) Generate  $\frac{(E,R)}{(E \cup \{s = t\}, R)} \text{ in case that } s \leftarrow_R \circ \rightarrow_R t$
- (3) Simplify EQ  $\frac{(E \cup \{s \doteq t\}, R)}{(E \cup \{u \doteq t\}, R)}$  in case that  $s \rightarrow_R u$
- (4) Simplify RS  $\frac{(E,R \cup \{s \to t\})}{(E,R \cup \{s \to u\})}$  in case that  $t \to_R u$
- (5) Simplify LS  $\frac{(E, R \cup \{s \to t\})}{(E \cup \{u \doteq t\}, R)}$  in case that  $s \to_R u$  with  $l \to r$  and  $s \succ l$  (SubSumOrd.)
- (6) Delete identities

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

21

Equational calculus and Computability

Implementation

### Equational implementations

Programming = Description of algorithms in a formal system

**Definition 10.1.** Let  $f: M_1 \times ... \times M_n \leadsto M_{n+1}$  be a (partial) function. Let  $T_i, 1 = 1...n + 1$  be decidable sets of ground terms over  $\Sigma$ ,  $\hat{f}$  n-ary function symbol, E set of equations.

A data interpretation  $\mathfrak{I}$  is a function  $\mathfrak{I}: T_i \to M_i$ .

 $\hat{f}$  implements f under the interpretation  $\Im$  in E iff

1)  $\Im(T_i) = M_i \quad (i = 1...n + 1)$ 

2)  $f(\Im(t_1),...,\Im(t_n)) = \Im(t_{n+1})$  iff  $\hat{f}(t_1,...,t_n) =_E t_{n+1} \ (\forall t_i \in T_i)$ 

 $\begin{array}{cccc} T_1 \times ... \times T_n & \xrightarrow{\hat{t}} & T_{n+1} \\ \mathfrak{I} \downarrow & \mathfrak{I} \downarrow & \mathfrak{I} \downarrow \\ M_1 \times ... \times M_n & \xrightarrow{f} & M_{n+1} \end{array}$ 

Abbreviation:  $(\hat{f}, E, \mathfrak{I})$  implements f.

Equational calculus and Computability

**Theorem 10.2.** Let E be set of equations or rules (same notations). For every i = 1, ..., n + 1 assume

1) 
$$\Im(T_i) = M_i$$

(2a) 
$$\hat{f}(\Im(t_1),...,\Im(t_n)) = \Im(t_{n+1}) \leadsto \hat{f}(t_1,...,t_n) =_E t_{n+1} \ (\forall t_i \in T_i)$$

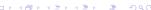
 $\hat{f}$  implements the total function f under  $\Im$  in E when one of the following conditions holds:

a) 
$$\forall t, t' \in \mathcal{T}_{n+1} : t =_{\mathcal{E}} t' \rightsquigarrow \mathfrak{I}(t) = \mathfrak{I}(t')$$

b) E confluent and 
$$\forall t \in T_{n+1} : t \to_E t' \leadsto t' \in T_{n+1} \land \Im(t) = \Im(t')$$

c) E confluent and 
$$T_{n+1}$$
 contains only E-irreducible terms.

Application: Assume  $(\hat{f}, E, \Im)$  implements the total function f. If E is extended by  $E_0$  under retention of  $\Im$ , then 1 and 2a still hold. If one of the criteria a, b, c are fullfiled for  $E \cup E_0$ , then  $(\hat{f}, E \cup E_0, \mathfrak{I})$  implements also the function f. This holds specially when  $E \cup E_0$  is confluent and  $T_{n+1}$  contains only  $E \cup E_0$  irreducible terms.



Equational calculus and Computability 

## Equational implementations

**Theorem 10.3.** Let  $(\hat{f}, E, \Im)$  implement the (partial) function f. Then

a) 
$$\forall t, t' \in T_{n+1} :: \mathfrak{I}(t) = \mathfrak{I}(t') \land \mathfrak{I}(t) \in Image(f) \leadsto t =_{E} t'$$

b) Let E be confluent and 
$$T_{n+1}$$
 contains only normal forms of E. Then  $\mathfrak{I}$  is injective on  $\{t \in T_{n+1} : \mathfrak{I}(t) \in Bild(f)\}$ .

**Theorem 10.4.** Criterion for the implementation of total functions. Assume

1) 
$$\Im(T_i) = M_i \ (i = 1, ..., n + 1)$$

2) 
$$\forall t, t' \in T_{n+1} :: \mathfrak{I}(t) = \mathfrak{I}(t')$$
 iff  $t =_{E} t'$ 

3) 
$$\forall_{1 \leq i \leq n} \ t_i \in T_i \ \exists t_{n+1} \in T_{n+1} ::$$

$$\hat{f}(t_1,...,t_n) =_E t_{n+1} \wedge f(\mathfrak{I}(t_1),...\mathfrak{I}(t_n)) = \mathfrak{I}(t_{n+1})$$

Then  $\hat{f}$  implements the function f under  $\Im$  in E and f is total.

Notice: If  $T_{n+1}$  contains only normal forms and E is confluent, so 2) is fulfilled, in case  $\Im$  is injective on  $T_{n+1}$ .

### 4 D > 4 B > 4 B > 4 B > B

### Equational implementations

**Theorem 10.5.** Let  $(\hat{f}, E, \Im)$  implement  $f: M_1 \times ... \times M_n \to M_{n+1}$ . Let  $S_i = \{t \in T_i :: \exists t_0 \in T_i : t \neq t_0, \Im(t) = \Im(t_0) \mid t \xrightarrow{+}_{F} t_0 \}$  be recursive

Then  $\hat{f}$  implements also f with term sets  $T'_i = T_i \setminus S_i$  under  $\mathfrak{I}_{T'_i}$  in E.

So we can delete terms of  $T_i$  that are reducible to other terms of  $T_i$  with the same  $\Im$ -value. Consequently the restriction to E-normal forms is allowed.

#### Consequence 10.6.

- ▶ Implementations can be composed.
- ▶ If we extend E by E- consequences then the implementation property is preserved.

This is important for the KB-Completion since only E-consequences are added.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Equational calculus and Computability

## Examples: Propositional logic, natural numbers

**Example 10.7.** Convention: Equations define the signature. Occasionally variadic functions and overloading. Single sorted.

Boolean algebra: Let  $M = \{true, false\}$  with  $\land, \lor, \neg, \supset, ...$ 

Constants tt, ff. Term set Bool :=  $\{tt, ff\}$ ,  $\Im(tt) = true$ ,  $\Im(ff) = false$ .

Strategy: Avoid rules with tt or ff as left side. According to theorem 10.1 c) we can add equations with these restrictions without influencing the

implementation property, as long as confluence is achieved. Consider the following rules:

(2)  $cond(ff, x, y) \rightarrow y$ . (help function). (1)  $cond(tt, x, y) \rightarrow x$ 

(3)  $\times$  vel  $y \rightarrow cond(x, tt, y)$ 

 $E = \{(1), (2), (3)\}\$  is confluent. Hence: tt vel  $y =_E cond(tt, tt, y) =_E tt$ holds. i.e.

 $(*_1)$  tt vel y = tt and  $(*_2)$  x vel tt = cond(x, tt, tt)

x vel tt = tt cannot be deduced out of E.

However vel implements the function ∨ with E

## Examples: Propositional logic

According to theorem 10.4, we must prove the conditions (1), (2), (3):  $\forall t, t' \in Bool \exists \overline{t} \in Bool :: \Im(t) \vee \Im(t') = \Im(\overline{t}) \wedge t \text{ vel } t' =_F \overline{t}$ 

For t = tt (\*1) and t = ff (2) since ff vel  $t' \to_E cond(ff, tt, t') \to_E t'$ Thus x vel  $tt \neq_E tt$  but tt vel  $tt =_E tt$ , ff vel  $tt =_E tt$ .

MC Carthy's rules for cond:

(1) 
$$cond(tt, x, y) = x$$
 (2)  $cond(ff, x, y) = y$  (\*)  $cond(x, tt, tt) = tt$ 

Notice Not identical with *cond* in Lisp. Difference: Evaluation strategy. Consider

(\*\*) 
$$cond(x, cond(x, y, z), u) \rightarrow cond(x, y, u)$$
  
 $\hookrightarrow E' = \{(1), (2), (3), (*), (**)\}$  is terminating and confluent.

Conventions: Sets of equations contain always (1), (2), (3) and x et  $y \rightarrow cond(x, y, ff)$ .

Notation: 
$$cond(x, y, z)$$
 ::  $[x \rightarrow y, z]$  or  $[x \rightarrow y_1, x_2 \rightarrow y_2, ..., x_n \rightarrow y_n, z]$  for  $[x \rightarrow [...]..., z]$ 



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Equational calculus and Computability

Implementations

## Examples: Semantical arguments

Properties of the implementing functions: (vel,  $E, \mathfrak{I}$ ) implements  $\vee$  of BOOL.

Statement: vel is associative on Bool.

Prove:  $\forall t_1, t_2, t_3 \in Bool : t_1 \ vel \ (t_2 \ vel \ t_3) =_E (t_1 \ vel \ t_2) \ vel \ t_3$ 

There exist  $t, t', T, T' \in Bool$  with

$$\mathfrak{I}(t_2)\vee\mathfrak{I}(t_3)=\mathfrak{I}(t)$$
 and  $\mathfrak{I}(t_1)\vee\mathfrak{I}(t_2)=\mathfrak{I}(t')$  as well as

$$\mathfrak{I}(t_1) \vee \mathfrak{I}(t) = \mathfrak{I}(T)$$
 and  $\mathfrak{I}(t') \vee \mathfrak{I}(t_3) = \mathfrak{I}(T')$ 

Because of the semantical valid associativity of  $\forall$   $\Im(T) = \Im(t_1) \vee \Im(t_2) \vee \Im(t_3) = \Im(T')$  holds.

Since *vel* implements ∨ it follows:

$$t_1 \text{ vel } (t_2 \text{ vel } t_3) =_E t_1 \text{ vel } t =_E T =_E T' =_E t' \text{ vel } t_3 =_E (t_1 \text{ vel } t_2) \text{ vel } t_3$$

<ロ > < 個 > < 量 > < 重 > の < で

Equational calculus and Computability

Implementations

### Examples: Natural numbers

Function symbols:  $\hat{0}, \hat{s}$  Ground terms:  $\{\hat{s}^n(\hat{0}) (n \ge 0)\}$ 

 $\Im$  Interpretation  $\Im(\hat{0}) = 0, \Im(\hat{s}) = \lambda x.x + 1$ , i.e.  $\Im(\hat{s}^n(\hat{0})) = n \ (n \ge 0)$ .

Abbreviation:  $n + 1 := \hat{s}(\hat{n}) \ (n \ge 0)$ 

Number terms.  $NAT = \{\hat{n} : n \ge 0\}$  normal forms (Theorem 10.1 c

holds).

#### Important help functions over *NAT*:

Let  $E = \{is\_null(\hat{0}) \rightarrow tt, is\_null(\hat{s}(x)) \rightarrow ff\}.$ 

 $is\_null \text{ implements the predicate } Is\_Null : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \{true, false\} \text{ Zero-test.}$ 

Extend *E* with (non terminating rules)

$$\hat{g}(x) \rightarrow [is\_null(x) \rightarrow \hat{0}, \hat{g}(x)], \qquad \hat{f}(x) \rightarrow [is\_null(x) \rightarrow \hat{g}(x), \hat{0}]$$

Statement: It holds under the standard interpretation  $\Im$ 

 $\hat{f}$  implements the null function f(x) = 0  $(x \in \mathbb{N})$  and

 $\hat{g}$  implements the function g(0) = 0 else undefined.

Because of 
$$\hat{f}(\hat{0}) \rightarrow [\textit{is\_null}(\hat{0}) \rightarrow \hat{g}(\hat{0}), \hat{0}] \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow} \hat{g}(\hat{0}) \rightarrow [...] \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow} \hat{0}$$
 and

$$\hat{f}(\hat{s}(x)) \rightarrow [is\_null(\hat{s}(x)) \rightarrow \hat{g}(\hat{s}(x)), \hat{0}] \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow} \hat{0}$$
 (follows from theorem 10.4).

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

327

Equational calculus and Computability

Implementatio

### Examples: Natural numbers

Extension of E to E' with rule:

$$\hat{f}(x, y) = [is \ null(x) \rightarrow y, \hat{0}] \ (\hat{f} \text{ overloaded})$$

 $\hat{f}$  implements the function  $F: \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \to \mathbb{N}$ 

$$F(x,y) = \begin{cases} y & x = 0 \\ 0 & x \neq 0 \end{cases} \qquad \begin{aligned} \hat{f}(\hat{0},\hat{y}) & \stackrel{*}{\to} \hat{y} \\ \hat{f}(\hat{s}(x),\hat{y}) & \stackrel{*}{\to} \hat{0} \end{aligned}$$

Nevertheless it holds:

$$\hat{f}(x,\hat{g}(x)) =_{E'} [is\_null(x) \to \hat{g}(x),\hat{0}]) =_{E'} \hat{f}(x)$$

But f(n) = F(n, g(n)) for n > 0 is not true.

If one wants to implement all the computable functions, then the recursion equations of Kleene cannot be directly used, since the composition of partial functions would be needed for it.

Primitive Recursive Functions

#### 

Primitive Recursive Functions

Equational calculus and Computability

## Representation of primitive recursive functions

The class  $\mathfrak P$  contains the functions

 $s = \lambda x.x + 1, \pi_i^n = \lambda x_1, ..., x_n.x_i$ , as well as  $c = \lambda x.0$  on  $\mathbb{N}$  and is closed w.r. to composition and primitive recursion. i.e.

$$f(x_1,...,x_n) = g(h_1(x_1,...,x_n),...,h_r(x_1,...,x_n))$$
 resp.

$$f(x_1,...,x_n,0) = g(x_1,...,x_n) f(x_1,...,x_n,y+1) = h(x_1,...,x_n,y,f(x_1,...,x_n,y))$$

Statement:  $f \in \mathfrak{P}$  is implementable by  $(\hat{f}, E_{\hat{r}}, \mathfrak{I})$ 

Idea: Show for suitable  $E_{\hat{x}}$ :

 $\hat{f}(\hat{k_1},...,\hat{k_n}) \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}_{E_2} f(k_1,...,k_n)$  with  $E_{\hat{x}}$  confluent and terminating.

Assumption: *FUNKT* (signature) contains for every  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  a countable number of function symbols of arity n.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Equational calculus and Computability 

Primitive Recursive Functions

### Implementation of primitive recursive functions

**Theorem 10.8.** For each finite set  $A \subset FUNKT \setminus \{\hat{0}, \hat{s}\}$  the exception set, and each function  $f: \mathbb{N}^n \to \mathbb{N}, f \in \mathfrak{P}$  there exist  $\hat{f} \in FUNKT$  and  $E_{\hat{f}}$  finite, confluent and terminating such that  $(\hat{f}, E_{\hat{x}}, \mathfrak{I})$  implements f and none of the equations in  $E_{\hat{x}}$  contains function symbols from A.

**Proof:** Induction over construction of  $\mathfrak{P}$ :  $\hat{0}$ ,  $\hat{s} \notin A$ . Set  $A' = A \cup \{\hat{0}, \hat{s}\}$ 

- $ightharpoonup \hat{s}$  implements s with  $E_{\hat{s}} = \emptyset$
- $\hat{\pi}_i^n \in FUNKT^n \setminus A' \text{ implem. } \pi_i^n \text{ with } E_{\hat{\pi}_i^n} = \{\hat{\pi}_i^n(x_1,...,x_n) \to x_i\}$
- $\hat{c} \in FUNKT^1 \setminus A'$  implements c with  $E_{\hat{c}} = \{\hat{c}(x) \to 0\}$
- ► Composition:  $[\hat{g}, E_{\hat{g}}, A_0]$ ,  $[\hat{h}_i, E_{\hat{h}_i}, A_i]$  with

 $A_i = A_{i-1} \cup \{f \in FUNKT : f \in E_{\hat{h}} \} \setminus \{\hat{0}, \hat{s}\}.$  Let  $\hat{f} \in FUNKT \setminus A'_r$ and  $E_{\hat{x}} = E_{\hat{x}} \cup \bigcup_{1}^{r} E_{\hat{h}_{r}} \cup \{\hat{f}(x_{1},...,x_{n}) \rightarrow \hat{g}(\hat{h}_{1}(...),...,\hat{h}_{r}(...))\}$ 

▶ Primitive recursion: Analogously with the defining equations.

### Implementation of primitive recursive functions

All the rules are left-linear without overlappings  $\rightsquigarrow$  confluence.

Termination criteria: Let  $\mathfrak{J}: FUNKT \to (\mathbb{N}^* \to \mathbb{N})$ , i.e

 $\mathfrak{J}(f): \mathbb{N}^{st(f)} \to \mathbb{N}$ , strictly monotonous in all the arguments. If E is a rule system,  $l \to r \in E, b : VAR \to \mathbb{N}$  (assignment), if  $\mathfrak{J}[b](l) > \mathfrak{J}[b](r)$ holds, then E terminates.

Idea: Use the Ackermann function as bound:

$$A(0, y) = y + 1, A(x + 1, 0) = A(x, 1), A(x + 1, y + 1) = A(x, A(x + 1, y))$$
  
A is strictly monotonic.

$$A(1,x) = x + 2, A(x,y+1) \le A(x+1,y), A(2,x) = 2x + 3$$
  
For each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  there is a  $\beta_n$  with  $\sum_{i=1}^{n} A(x_i, x) \le A(\beta_n(x_1, ..., x_n), x)$ 

Define  $\mathfrak{J}$  through  $\mathfrak{J}(\hat{f})(k_1,...,k_n) = A(p_{\hat{x}},\sum k_i)$  with suitable  $p_{\hat{x}}\in\mathbb{N}$ .

- $\triangleright$   $p_{\hat{s}} := 1 :: \mathfrak{J}[b](\hat{s}(x)) = A(1, b(x)) = b(x) + 2 > b(x) + 1$
- $p_{\hat{\pi}^n} := 1 :: \mathfrak{J}[b](\hat{\pi}_i^n(x_1,...,x_n)) = A(1,\sum_{1}^n b(x_i)) > b(x_i)$
- $p_{\hat{c}} := 1 :: \mathfrak{J}[b](\hat{c}(x)) = A(1, b(x)) > 0 = \mathfrak{J}[b](\hat{0})$

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Equational calculus and Computability

000000000**000**000000

Primitive Recursive Functions

## Implementation of primitive recursive functions

- Composition:  $f(x_1,...,x_n) = g(h_1(...),...,h_r(...))$ . Set  $c^* = \beta_r(p_{\hat{p}_r}, ..., p_{\hat{p}_r})$  and  $p_{\hat{f}} := p_{\hat{g}} + c^* + 2$ . Check that  $\mathfrak{J}[b](\hat{f}(x_1,...,x_n)) > \mathfrak{J}[b](\hat{g}(\hat{h}_1(x_1,...,x_n),...,\hat{h}_r(x_1,...,x_n)))$
- ► Primitive recursion:

Set  $m = max(p_{\hat{x}}, p_{\hat{x}})$  and  $p_{\hat{x}} := m + 3$ . Check that  $\mathfrak{J}[b](\hat{f}(x_1,...,x_n,0)) > \mathfrak{J}[b](\hat{g}(x_1,...,x_n))$  and  $\mathfrak{J}[b](\hat{f}(x_1,...,x_n,\hat{s}(y))) > \mathfrak{J}[b](\hat{g}(...)).$ Apply  $A(m+3, k+3) > A(p_{\hat{k}}, k+A(p_{\hat{k}}, k))$ 

- ▶ By induction show that  $\hat{f}(\hat{k}_1,...,\hat{k}_n) \stackrel{*}{\to_{E_n}} f(k_1,...,k_n)$
- From the theorem 10.4 the statement follows.

#### Equational calculus and Computability

#### Recursive and partially recursive functions

## Representation of recursive functions

Minimization::  $\mu$ -Operator  $\mu_v[g(x_1,...,x_n,y)=0]=z$  iff i)  $g(x_1, ..., x_n, i)$  defined  $\neq 0$  for 0 < i < z ii)  $g(x_1, ..., x_n, z) = 0$ 

Regular minimization:  $\mu$  is applied to total functions for which  $\forall x_1,...,x_n \exists y : g(x_1,...,x_n,y) = 0$ 

R is closed w.r. to composition, primitive recursion and regular minimization.

Show that: regular minimization is implementable with exception set A. Assume  $\hat{g}$ ,  $E_{\hat{g}}$  implement g where  $\hat{g}(\hat{k}_1,...,\hat{k}_{n+1}) \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}_{E_{\hat{g}}} g(k_1,...,k_{n+1})$ Let  $\hat{f}, \hat{f}^+, \hat{f}^*$  be new and  $E_{\hat{f}} := E_{\hat{g}} \cup \{\hat{f}(x_1, ..., x_n) \to \hat{f}^*(x_1, ..., x_n, \hat{0}), \hat{f}^*(x_1, ..., x_n, \hat{0})\}$  $\hat{f}^*(x_1,...,x_n,y) \to \hat{f}^+(\hat{g}(x_1,...,x_n,y),x_1,...,x_n,y),$  $\hat{f}^+(\hat{0},x_1,...,x_n,y) \to y, \hat{f}^+(\hat{s}(x),x_1,...,x_n,y) \to \hat{f}^*(x_1,...,x_n,\hat{s}(y))\}$ 

Claim:  $(\hat{f}, E_{\hat{x}})$  implements the minimization of g.



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Equational calculus and Computability 

Recursive and partially recursive functions

## Implementation of recursive functions

Assumption: For each  $k_1, ..., k_n \in \mathbb{N}$  there is a smallest  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  with  $g(k_1,...,k_n,k)=0$ 

Claim: For every  $i \in \mathbb{N}, i \leq k$   $\hat{f}^*(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, (k - i)) \xrightarrow{*}_{E_k} \hat{k}$  holds Proof: induction over i:

- $i = 0 :: \hat{f}^*(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, \hat{k}) \to \hat{f}^+(\hat{g}(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, \hat{k}), \hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, \hat{k}) \to_{E_{\hat{g}}}^*$   $\hat{f}^+(g(k_1, ..., k_n, k), \hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, \hat{k}) \to \hat{k}$
- $i > 0 :: \hat{f}^*(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, k (\hat{i} + 1)) \rightarrow$  $\hat{f}^+(\hat{g}(\hat{k}_1,...,\hat{k}_n,k-(\hat{i}+1)),\hat{k}_1,...,\hat{k}_n,k-(\hat{i}+1) \rightarrow^*_{E_n}$  $\hat{f}^+(\hat{s}(\hat{x}), \hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, k - (\hat{i} + 1) \rightarrow \hat{f}^*(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, \hat{s}(k - (\hat{i} + 1))) = \hat{f}^*(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, \hat{k} - \hat{i})) \xrightarrow{*}_{E_{\hat{s}}} \hat{k}$

For appropriate x and Induction hypothesis.

- ▶  $E_{\hat{f}}$  is confluent and according to Theorem 10.4,  $(\hat{f}, E_{\hat{f}})$  implements the total function f.
- $E_{\hat{f}}$  is not terminating  $g(k, m) = \delta_{k, m} \leadsto \hat{f}^*(\hat{k}, k + 1)$  leads to NT-chain. Termination is achievable!.

### Representation of partial recursive functions

Problem: Recursion equations (Kleene's normal form) cannot be directly used. Arguments must have "number" as value. (See example). Some arguments can be saved:

#### Example 10.9.

 $f(x,y) = g(h_1(x,y), h_2(x,y), h_3(x,y))$ . Let  $g, h_1, h_2, h_3$  be implementable by sets of equations as partial functions.

Claim: f is implementable. Let  $\hat{f}$ ,  $\hat{f}_1$ ,  $\hat{f}_2$  be new and set:

$$\begin{split} \hat{f}(x,y) &= \\ \hat{f}_1(\hat{h}_1(x,y),\hat{h}_2(x,y),\hat{h}_3(x,y),\hat{f}_2(\hat{h}_1(x,y)),\hat{f}_2(\hat{h}_2(x,y)),\hat{f}_2(\hat{h}_3(x,y))) \\ \hat{f}_1(x_1,x_2,x_3,\hat{0},\hat{0},\hat{0}) &= \hat{g}(x_1,x_2,x_3), \quad \hat{f}_2(\hat{0}) &= \hat{0}, \quad \hat{f}_2(\hat{s}(x)) = \hat{f}_2(x) \\ (\hat{f},E_{\hat{g}},E_{\hat{h}_1},E_{\hat{h}_2},E_{\hat{h}_3} \cup REST) \text{ implements f.} \end{split}$$

Theorem 10.4 cannot be applied!!.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Equational calculus and Computability

Recursive and partially recursive functions

# $(\hat{f}, E_{\hat{g}}, E_{\hat{h}_1}, E_{\hat{h}_2}, E_{\hat{h}_3} \cup REST)$ implements f.

Apply definition 10.1:

 $\curvearrowright$  For number-terms let  $f(\mathfrak{I}(t_1),\mathfrak{I}(t_2))=\mathfrak{I}(t)$ . There are number-terms  $T_i$  (i = 1, 2, 3) with

 $g(\mathfrak{I}(T_1),\mathfrak{I}(T_2),\mathfrak{I}(T_3))=\mathfrak{I}(t)$  and  $h_i(\mathfrak{I}(t_1),\mathfrak{I}(t_2))=\mathfrak{I}(T_i)$ .

Assumption:  $\hat{g}(T_1, T_2, T_3) =_{E_2} t$  and  $\hat{h}_i(t_1, t_2) =_{E_2} T_i(i = 1, 2, 3)$ . The

 $T_i$  are number-terms::  $\hat{f}_2(T_i) =_{E_2} \hat{0}$  i.e.  $\hat{f}_2(\hat{h}_i(t_1, t_2)) =_{E_2} \hat{0}$  (i = 1, 2, 3).

 $\hat{f}(t_1, t_2) =_{E_{\hat{x}}} \hat{f}_1(T_1, T_2, T_3, \hat{0}, \hat{0}, \hat{0}) \leadsto \hat{f}(t_1, t_2) =_{E_{\hat{x}}} t(=_{E_{\hat{x}}} \hat{g}(T_1, T_2, T_3))$ 

 $\curvearrowleft$  For number-terms  $t_1, t_2, t$  let  $\hat{f}(t_1, t_2) =_{E_z} t$ , so

 $\hat{f}_1(\hat{h}_1(t_1, t_2), \hat{h}_2(t_1, t_2), \hat{h}_3(t_1, t_2), \hat{f}_2(\hat{h}_1(t_1, t_2), ...)) =_{E_a} t$ . If for an

i=1,2,3  $\hat{f}_2(\hat{h}_i(t_1,t_2))$  would not be  $E_2$  equal to  $\hat{0}$ , then the  $E_2$ 

equivalence class contains only  $\hat{f}_1$  terms. So there are number-terms  $T_1, T_2, T_3$  with  $\hat{h}_i(t_1, t_2) =_{E_i} = T_i$  (i = 1, 2, 3) (Otherwise only  $\hat{f}_2$  terms equivalent to  $\hat{f}_2(\hat{h}_i(t_1, t_2))$ . From Assumption:

 $\rightsquigarrow h_i(\mathfrak{I}(T_1),\mathfrak{I}(T_2)) = \mathfrak{I}(T_i), \qquad g(\mathfrak{I}(T_1),\mathfrak{I}(T_2),\mathfrak{I}(T_3)) = \mathfrak{I}(t)$ 

## $\mathfrak{R}_p$ and normalized register machines

**Definition 10.10.** *Program terms* for RM:  $P_n$   $(n \in \mathbb{N})$  Let  $0 \le i \le n$  Function symbols:  $a_i, s_i$  constants  $, \circ$  binary  $, W^i$  unary Intended interpretation:

a; :: Increase in one the value of the contents on register i.

 $s_i$ :: Decrease in one the value of the contents on register i.(-1)

 $\circ (M_1, M_2) :: Concatenation M_1 M_2 (First M_1, then M_2)$ 

 $W^{i}(M)$ :: While contents of register i not 0, execute M Abbr.:  $(M)_{i}$ 

Note:  $P_n \subseteq P_m$  for  $n \le m$ 

Semantics through partial functions:  $M_e: P_n \times \mathbb{N}^n \to \mathbb{N}^n$ 

- $M_e(a_i, \langle x_1, ..., x_n \rangle) = \langle ...x_{i-1}, x_i + 1, x_{i+1} ... \rangle (s_i :: x_i 1)$
- $M_e(M_1M_2, \langle x_1, ..., x_n \rangle) = M_e(M_2, M_e(M_1, \langle x_1, ..., x_n \rangle))$
- $\qquad \qquad \blacktriangleright \ \, M_e((M)_i,\langle x_1,...,x_n\rangle) = \begin{cases} \langle x_1,...,x_n\rangle & x_i = 0 \\ M_e((M)_i,M_e(M,\langle x_1,...,x_n\rangle)) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

337

Equational calculus and Computability

Partial recursive functions and register machines

### Implementation of normalized register machines

**Lemma 10.11.**  $M_e$  can be implemented by a system of equations.

Proof: Let  $tup_n$  be n-ary function symbol. For  $t_i \in \mathbb{N}$   $(0 < i \le n)$  let  $\langle t_1, ..., t_n \rangle$  be the interpretation for  $tup_n(\hat{t}_1, ..., \hat{t}_n)$ . Program terms are interpreted by themselves (since they are terms). For m > n::

$$P_n$$
  $tup_m(\hat{t}_1,...,\hat{t}_m)$  syntactical level

$$\mathfrak{I}\downarrow$$
  $\mathfrak{I}\downarrow$ 

$$P_n \qquad \langle t_1, ..., t_m \rangle$$
 Interpretation

Let *eval* be a binary function symbol for the implementation of  $M_e$  and i < n. Define  $E_n := \{$ 

$$eval(a_i, tup_n(x_1,...,x_n)) \rightarrow tup_n(x_1,...,x_{i-1},\hat{s}(x_i),x_{i+1},...,x_n)$$

$$eval(s_i, tup_n(..., x_{i-1}, \hat{0}, x_{i+1}...)) \rightarrow tup_n(..., x_{i-1}, \hat{0}, x_{i+1}...)$$

$$eval(\hat{s}_i, tup_n(..., x_{i-1}, \hat{s}(x), x_{i+1}...)) \rightarrow tup_n(..., x_{i-1}, x, x_{i+1}...)$$

$$eval(x_1x_2,t) \rightarrow eval(x_2, eval(x_1,t))$$

$$eval((x)_i, tup_n(..., x_{i-1}, \hat{0}, x_{i+1}...)) \rightarrow tup_n(..., x_{i-1}, \hat{0}, x_{i+1}...)$$

$$eval((x)_i, tup_n(..., x_{i-1}, \hat{s}(y), x_{i+1}...) \rightarrow$$

$$eval((x)_i, eval(x, tup_n(..., x_{i-1}, \hat{s}(y), x_{i+1}...)))$$

200

Equational calculus and Computability

Partial recursive functions and register machine

## (eval, $E_n$ , $\Im$ ) implements $M_e$

Consider program terms that contain at most registers with  $1 \le i \le n$ .

- $\triangleright$   $E_n$  is confluent (left-linear, without critical pairs).
- ▶ Theorem 10.4 not applicable, since  $M_e$  is not total. Prove conditions of the Definition 10.1.
- (1)  $\Im(T_i) = M_i$  according to the definition.

(2) 
$$M_e(p, \langle k_1, ..., k_n \rangle) = \langle m_1, ..., m_n \rangle$$
 iff  $eval(p, tup_n(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n)) = E_n tup_n(\hat{m}_1, ..., \hat{m}_n)$ 

 $\sim$  out of the def. of  $M_e$  res.  $E_n$ . induction on construction of p.

1. 
$$p = a_i(s_i) :: \hat{k}_j = \hat{m}_j(j \neq i), \hat{s}(\hat{k}_i) = \hat{m}_i \text{ res. } \hat{k}_i = \hat{m}_i = \hat{0}$$
  
 $(\hat{k}_i = \hat{s}(\hat{m}_i)) \text{ for } s_i$ 

2.Let 
$$p = p_1 p_2$$
 and

$$eval(p_2, eval(p_1, tup_n(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n))) \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}_{E_n} tup_n(\hat{m}_1, ..., \hat{m}_n)$$

Because of the rules in  $E_n$  it holds:

4 D > 4 A > 4 B > 4 B > 9

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

\_\_\_\_\_

Equational calculus and Computability

Partial recursive functions and register machine

## $(eval, E_n, \mathfrak{I})$ implements $M_e$

There are  $i_1,...,i_n \in \mathbb{N}$  with  $eval(p_1,tup_n(\hat{k}_1,...,\hat{k}_n)) \stackrel{*}{\to}_{E_n} tup_n(\hat{i}_1,...,\hat{i}_n)$  hence

$$eval(p_2, tup_n(\hat{i}_1, ..., \hat{i}_n)) \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}_{E_n} tup_n(\hat{m}_1, ..., \hat{m}_n)$$

According to the induction hypothesis (2-times) the statement holds.

3. Let  $p = (p_1)_i$ . Then:

$$eval((p_1)_i, tup_n(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n)) \stackrel{*}{\to}_{E_n} tup_n(\hat{m}_1, ..., \hat{m}_n)$$

There exists a finite sequence  $(t_i)_{1 \le i \le l}$  with

$$t_1 = eval((p_1)_i, tup_n(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n)), t_i \to t_{i+1}, t_i = tup_n(\hat{m}_1, ..., \hat{m}_n)$$

There exists subsequence  $(T_i)_{1 \le i \le m}$  of form  $eval((p_1)_i, tup_n(\hat{i}_{1.i}, ..., \hat{i}_{n.i}))$ 

For  $T_m$   $i_{i,m} = 0$  holds, i.e.  $i_{1,m} = m_1, ..., i_{i,m} = 0 = m_i, ..., i_{n,m} = m_n$ .

For j < m always  $i_{i,j} \neq 0$  holds and

 $eval(p_1, tup_n(\hat{i}_{1,j},...,\hat{i}_{n,j}) \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}_{E_n} tup_n(\hat{i}_{1,j+1},...,\hat{i}_{n,j+1}).$ 

The induction hypothesis gives:

$$M_e(p_1, \langle i_{1,j}, ..., i_{n,j} \rangle) = \langle i_{1,j+1}, ..., i_{n,j+1} \rangle \text{ for } j = 1, ..., m.$$

But then  $M_e((p_1)_i, \langle i_{1,j}, ..., i_{n,j} \rangle) = \langle m_1, ..., m_n \rangle$   $(1 \le j < m)$ 

## Implementation of $\mathfrak{R}_n$

For  $f \in \mathfrak{R}_p^{n,1}$  there are  $r \in \mathbb{N}$ , program term p with at most r-registers  $(n+1 \le r)$ , so that for every  $k_1, ..., k_n, k \in \mathbb{N}$  holds:  $f(k_1,...,k_n) = k$ iif  $\forall m > 0$ 

$$eval(p, tup_{r+m}(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, \hat{0}, \hat{0}, ..., \hat{0}, \hat{x}_1, ..., \hat{x}_m)) =_{E_{r+m}} tup_{r+m}(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, \hat{k}, \hat{0}, ..., \hat{0}, \hat{x}_1, ..., \hat{x}_m)$$
 iif

$$eval(p, tup_r(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, \hat{0}, \hat{0}, ..., \hat{0})) =_{E_r} tup_r(\hat{k}_1, ..., \hat{k}_n, \hat{k}, \hat{0}, ..., \hat{0})$$

Note:  $E_r \sqsubset E_{r+m}$  via  $tup_r(...) \triangleright tup_{r+m}(..., \hat{0}, ..., \hat{0})$ .

Let  $\hat{f}$ ,  $\hat{R}$  be new function symbols, p program for f. Extend  $E_r$  by  $\hat{f}(y_1,...,y_n) \rightarrow \hat{R}(eval(p,tup_r(y_1,...,y_n),\hat{0},...,\hat{0}))$  $\hat{R}(tup_r(y_1,...,y_r)) = y_{n+1} \text{ to } E_{ext(f)}.$ 

**Theorem 10.12.**  $f \in \mathfrak{R}_{p}^{n,1}$  is implemented by  $(\hat{f}, E_{\text{ext}(f)}, \mathfrak{I})$ .



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Equational calculus and Computability 

Partial recursive functions and register machines

### Non computable functions

Let E be recursive.  $T_i$  recursive. Then the predicate

$$P(t_1,...,t_n,t_{n+1})$$
 iff  $\hat{f}(t_1,...,t_n) =_E t_{n+1}$ 

is a r.a. predicate on  $T_1 \times ... \times T_n \times T_{n+1}$ 

If the function  $\hat{f}$  implements f, then P represents the graph of the function  $f \rightsquigarrow f \in \mathfrak{R}_p$ .

Kleene's normal form theorem:

$$f(x_1,...,x_n) = U(\mu[T_n(p,x_1,...,x_n,y)=0])$$

Let h be the total non recursive function, defined by:

Let 
$$h$$
 be the total non recursive function, defined by:
$$h(x) = \begin{cases} \mu[T_1(x, x, y) = 0] & \text{in case that } \exists y : T_1(x, x, y) = 0 \\ y & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

h is uniquely defined through the following predicate:

$$(1) (T_1(x,x,y) = 0 \land \forall z(z < y \leadsto T_1(x,x,z) \neq 0)) \leadsto h(x) = y$$

$$(2) (\forall z (z < y \land T_1(x, x, z) \neq 0)) \rightsquigarrow (h(x) = 0 \lor h(x) \geq y)$$

If h(x) is replaced by u, then these are prim. rec. predicates in x, y, u.

Equational calculus and Computability 

Partial recursive functions and register machine

## Non computable functions

There are primitive recursive functions  $P_1$ ,  $P_2$  in x, y, u, so that

(1') 
$$P_1(x, y, h(x)) = 0$$
 and (2')  $P_2(x, y, h(x)) = 0$ 

represent (1) and (2).

Hence there are an equational system E and function symbols  $\hat{P}_1, \hat{P}_2$ that implement  $P_1$ ,  $P_2$  under the standard interpretation.

(As prim. rec. functions in the Var. x, y, u)

Let  $\hat{h}$  be fresh. Add to E the equations

$$\hat{P}_1(x, y, \hat{h}(x)) = \hat{0}$$
 and  $\hat{P}_2(x, y, \hat{h}(x)) = \hat{0}$ .

The equational system is consistent (there are models) and  $\hat{h}$  is interpreted by the function h on the natural numbers. $\rightsquigarrow$ 

It is possible to specify non recursive functions implicitly with a finite set of equations, in case arbitrary models are accepted as interpretations.

Through non recursive sets of equations any function can be implemented by a confluent, terminating ground system :

$$E = \{\hat{h}(\hat{t}) = \hat{t}' : t, t' \in \mathbb{N}, h(t) = t'\}$$
 (Rule application is not effective).

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techn

Equational calculus and Computability

Computable algebrae

## Computable algebras

#### Definition 10.13.

- $\blacktriangleright$  A sig-Algebra  $\mathfrak A$  is recursive (effective, computable), if the base sets are recursive and all operations are recursive functions.
- ▶ A specification spec = (sig, E) is recursive, if  $T_{spec}$  is recursive.

**Example 10.14.** Let  $sig = (\{nat, even\}, odd :\rightarrow even, 0 :\rightarrow nat, even, 0 :\rightarrow n$  $s: nat \rightarrow nat. red: nat \rightarrow even$ ).

As sig-Algebra  $\mathfrak A$  choose:  $A_{even}=\{2n:n\in\mathbb N\}\cup\{1\},A_{nat}=\mathbb N$  with odd as 1. red as  $\lambda x$ .if x even then x else 1. Claim: There is no finite (init-Algebra) specification for  $\mathfrak A$ 

- ▶ No equations of the sort nat.
- ightharpoonup odd, red( $s^n(0)$ ), red( $s^n(x)$ ) ( $n \ge 0$ ) terms of sort even. No equations of the form  $red(s^n(x)) = red(s^m(x) \ (n \neq m))$  are possible.
- ▶ Infinite number of ground equations are needed.



Computable algebrae

## Computable algebras

**Solution:** Enrichment of the signature with:

even:  $nat \rightarrow nat$  and cond: nat nat nat nat mat mat

 $\lambda x$ . if x even then 0 else 1,  $\lambda x, y, z$ . if x = 0 then y else z

#### Equations:

$$even(0) = 0$$
,  $even(s(0)) = s(0)$ ,  $even(s(s(x))) = even(x)$   
 $cond(0, y, z) = y$ ,  $cond(s(x), y, z) = z$   
 $red(x) = cond(even(x), red(x), odd)$ 

Alternative: Conditional equations:

red(s(0)) = odd, red(s(s(x))) = odd if red(x) = odd

Conditional equational systems (term replacement systems) are more "expressive" as pure equational systems. They also define reduction relations. Confluence and termination criteria can be derived. Negated equations in the conditions lead to problems with the initial semantics (non Horn-clause specifications).



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

245

Equational calculus and Computability

Computable algebrae

## Computable algebras: Results

**Theorem 10.15.** Let  $\mathfrak A$  be a recursive term generated sig- Algebra. Then there is a finite enrichment sig' of sig and a finite specification  $\operatorname{spec}' = (\operatorname{sig}', E)$  with  $T_{\operatorname{spec}'}|_{\operatorname{sig}} \cong \mathfrak A$ .

**Theorem 10.16.** Let  $\mathfrak A$  be a term generated sig- Algebra. Then there are equivalent:

- A is recursive.
- ► There is a finite enrichment (without new sorts) sig' of sig and a finite convergent rule system R, so that  $\mathfrak{A} \cong T_{\mathsf{spec}'}|_{\mathsf{sig}}$  for  $\mathsf{spec}' = (\mathsf{sig}', R)$

See Bergstra, Tucker: Characterization of Computable Data Types (Math. Center Amsterdam 79).

Attention: Does not hold for signatures with only unary function symbols.

## Reduction strategies for replacement systems

Basic implementation problems for functional programming languages.

Which reduction strategies guarantee the calculation of normal forms, in case these exist. Let R be TES,  $t \in term(\Sigma)$ .

Assuming that there is  $\bar{t}$  irreducible with  $t \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow}_R \bar{t}$ .

- ▶ Which choice of the redexes guarantees a "computation" of  $\bar{t}$ ?
- ► Which choice of the redexes delivers the "shortest" derivation sequence?
- ▶ Let *R* be terminating. Is there a reduction strategy that delivers always the shortest derivation sequence? How much does it cost?

For SKI—calculus and  $\lambda$ —calculus the Left-Most-Outermost strategy (normal strategy) is normalizing, i.e. calculates a normal form of a term if it exists. It doesn't deliver the shortest derivation sequences. Though it holds: If  $t \stackrel{k}{\to} \bar{t}$  is a shortest derivation sequence, then  $t \rightarrow_{LMOM}^{\leq 2^k} \bar{t}$ . By using structure-sharing-methods, the bounds for LMOM can be lowered.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction strategies .

Generalities

## Functional computability models

- ▶ Partial recursive functions (Basic functions + Operators)
- ► Term rewriting systems (Algebraic Specification)
- $\triangleright$   $\lambda$ -Calculus and Combinator Calculus
- ► Graph replacement Systems (Implementation + efficiency)

Central Notion: Application:

Expressions represent functions, Application of functions on functions  $\leadsto$  Self application problem

See e.g. Barendregt: Functional Programming and  $\lambda$ -Calculus Handbook of Theoretical Computer Science.

Reduction strategies

### $\lambda$ -Calculus und Combinator Calculus: Informal

#### Basic operations:

- Application:: F.A or (FA)
  F as program term is "applied" on A as argument term.
- ► Abstraction::  $\lambda x.M$ Denotes a function which maps x into M, M can "depend" on x.
- **Example:**  $(\lambda x.2 * x + 1).3$  should give as result 2 \* 3 + 1, hence 7.
- ▶  $\beta$ -Rule::  $(\lambda x.M[x])N = M[x := N]$  "Free" occurrences of x in M are "replaced" by N.  $\beta$ -Conversion

$$(yx(\lambda x.x))[x := N] \equiv (yN(\lambda x.x))$$

Notice: Free occurrences of variables in N remain free (renaming of variables if necessary)

$$(\lambda x.y)[y := xx] \equiv \lambda z.xx \ z$$
 "new"



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

340

Reduction strategies

Generalities

### $\lambda$ -Calculus und Combinator Calculus: Informal

- ►  $\alpha$ -Rule::  $\lambda x.M = \lambda y.M[x := y]$  with y "new"  $\lambda x.x = \lambda y.y$ . Same effect as "Functions"  $\alpha$ -Conversion
- ▶ Set of  $\lambda$  terms in C and V::

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

$$\Lambda(C, V) = C|V|(\Lambda\Lambda)|(\lambda V.\Lambda)$$

- ▶ Set of free variables of M:: FV(M)
- ▶ M is closed (Combinator) if  $FV(M) = \emptyset$
- ► Standard Combinators::  $I \equiv \lambda x.x$   $K \equiv \lambda xy.x$   $B \equiv \lambda xyz.x(yz)$   $K_* \equiv \lambda xy.y$   $S \equiv \lambda xyz.xz(yz)$
- Following equalities hold:  $IM = M \quad KMN = M \quad K_*MN = N \quad SMNL = ML(NL)$ BLMN = L(M(N))
- ► Fixpoint Theorem::  $\forall F \exists X \quad FX = X \text{ with e.g. } X \equiv WW \text{ and } W \equiv \lambda x.F(xx)$

# $\lambda$ -Calculus und Combinator Calculus: Informal

- ► Representation of functions, numbers  $c_n \equiv \lambda f x. f^n(x)$ F combinator represents f iff  $F z_{n1}...z_{nk} = z_{f(n1,...,nk)}$
- f is partial recursive iff f is represented by a combinator.
- ▶ Theorem of Scott: Let  $A \subset \Lambda$ , A non trivial and closed under =, then A not recursively decidable.
- ▶  $\beta$ -Reduction::  $(\lambda x.M)N \rightarrow_{\beta} M[x := N]$
- ightharpoonup NF =Set of terms which have a normal form is not recursive.
- $\triangleright$   $(\lambda x.xx)y$  is not in normal form, yy is in normal form.
- $(\lambda x.xx)(\lambda x.xx)$  has no normal form.
- ▶ Church Rosser Theorem::  $\rightarrow_{\beta}$  ist confluent
- ▶ Theorem of Curry If M has a normal form then  $M \to_I^* N$ , i.e. Leftmost Reduction is normalizing.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction strategies .

#### 

## Reduction strategies for replacement systems

#### **Definition 11.1.** Let R be a TES.

- ▶ A one-step reduction strategy  $\mathfrak{S}$  for R is a mapping  $\mathfrak{S}$ : term $(R, V) \to term(R, V)$  with  $t = \mathfrak{S}(t)$  in case that t is in normal form and  $t \to_R \mathfrak{S}(t)$  otherwise.
- ▶  $\mathfrak{S}$  is a multiple-step-reduction strategy for R if  $t = \mathfrak{S}(t)$  in case that t is in normal form and  $t \stackrel{+}{\to}_R \mathfrak{S}(t)$  otherwise.
- ▶ A reduction strategy  $\mathfrak{S}$  is called normalizing for R, if for each term t with a R- normal form, the sequence  $(\mathfrak{S}^n(t))_{n\geq 0}$  contains a normal form. (Contains in particular a finite number of terms).
- ▶ A reduction strategy  $\mathfrak{S}$  is called <u>cofinal</u> for R, if for each t and  $r \in \Delta^*(t)$  there is a  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  with  $r \stackrel{*}{\to}_R \mathfrak{S}^n(t)$ .

Cofinal reduction strategies are optimal in the following sense: they deliver maximal information gain.

Assuming that normal forms contain always maximal information.

## Known reduction strategies

#### **Definition 11.2.** *Reduction strategies:*

- ▶ Leftmost-Innermost (Call-by-Value). One-step-RS, the redex that appears most left in the term and that contains no proper redex is reduced.
- ▶ Paralell-Innermost. Multiple-step-RS.  $PI(t) = \overline{t}$ , at which  $t \mapsto \overline{t}$  (All the innermost redexes are reduced).
- ▶ Leftmost-Outermost (Call-by-Name). One-step-RS.
- ▶ Parallel-Outermost. Multiple-step-RS.  $PO(t) = \overline{t}$ , at which  $t \mapsto \overline{t}$  (All the disjoint outermost redexes are reduced).
- ► Fair-LMOM. A left-most outermost redex in a red-sequence is eventually reduced. (A LMOR in such a strategy doesn't remain unreduced for ever). (Lazy strategy).



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

353

Generalities

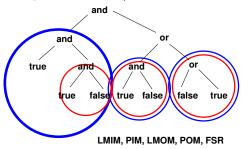
## Known reduction strategies

- ▶ Full-substitution-rule. (Only for orthogonal systems). Multiple-step-RS. GK(t) ::  $t \stackrel{+}{\rightarrow} GK(t)$  all the redexes in t are reduced, in case they're not disjunct, then the residuals of the redexes are also reduced.
- ► Call-By-Need. One-step-RS. It reduces always a necessary redex. A redex in t is necessary, when it must be reduced in order to compute the normal form. (Only for certain TES e.g. LMOM for SKI calculus) Problem: How can one decide whether a redex is necessary or not?
- ▶ Variable-Delay-Strategy: One-step-RS. Reduce redex, that doesn't appear as redex in the instance of a variable of another redex.

## Examples

#### **Example 11.3.** :

▶  $and(true, x) \rightarrow x$ ,  $and(false, x) \rightarrow false$ ,  $or(true, x) \rightarrow true$ ,  $or(false, x) \rightarrow x$ Orthogonal, strong left sequential (constants "before" the variables).



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction strategies

Generalities

## Examples

- ► FSR (Full-Substitution-Rule): Choose all the redexes in the term and reduce them from innermost to outermost (notice no redex is destroyed). Cofinal for orthogonal systems.
- $\Sigma = \{a, b, c, d_i : i \in \mathbb{N}\}$   $R := \{a \to b, d_k(x) \to d_{k+1}(x), c(d_k(b)) \to b$  confluent (left linear parallel 0-closed).  $c(d_0(a)) \to_1 c(d_1(a)) \to_1 \dots \text{ not normalizing (POM)}.$   $c(d_0(a)) \to_{1,1} c(d_0(b)) \to_0 b$

## **Examples**

▶  $\Sigma = \{a, b_i, c, d : i \in \mathbb{N}\}$ . Non confluent SRS:  $R = \{ab_0c \rightarrow acb_0, ab_0d \rightarrow ad, c \rightarrow d, cb_i \rightarrow d, b_i \rightarrow b_{i+1}(i \geq 1)\}$   $ab_0c \rightarrow_{11} ab_0d \rightarrow ad$  $ab_0c \rightarrow_{0} acb_0 \rightarrow_{11} acb_1 \rightarrow adb_1 \rightarrow ...$ 

►  $\Sigma = \{f, a, b, c, d\}$   $R = \{f(x, b) \rightarrow d, a \rightarrow b, c \rightarrow c\}$  Orthogonal. LMOM must not be normalizing:  $f(c, a) \rightarrow f(c, a) \rightarrow ....$  but  $f(c, a) \rightarrow f(c, b) \rightarrow d$ 

►  $f(a, f(x, y)) \rightarrow f(x, f(x, f(b, b)))$  left linear with overlaps.  $f(a, f(a, f(b, b))) \rightarrow_{OUT} f(a, f(a, f(b, b))) \rightarrow_{OUT} ....$   $\downarrow^{INN}$  $f(a, f(b, f(b, f(b, b)))) \rightarrow f(b, f(b, f(b, b)))$ 

►  $R = \{f(g(x), c) \rightarrow h(x, d), b \rightarrow c\}$   $f(g(f(a, f(a, \underline{b}))), c) \rightarrow_{VD} h(f(a, f(a, \underline{b})), d) \rightarrow_{VD}$ h(f(a, f(a, c)), d)



Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

357

#### Reduction strategies

Orthogonal systems

## Strategies for orthogonal systems

**Theorem 11.4.** For orthogonal systems the following holds:

- ▶ Full-Substitution-Rule is a cofinal reduction strategy.
- ▶ POM is a normalizing reduction strategy.
- ▶ LMOM is normalizing for  $\lambda$ -calculus and CL-calculus.
- Every fair-outermost strategy is normalizing.

Main tools: Elementary reduction diagrams and reduction diagrams:

$$Sab(Ic) 
ightarrow a(Ic)(b(Ic)) \qquad Ka(Ib) 
ightarrow Kal \ ac(b(Ic)) \ Sabc 
ightarrow ac(bc) \qquad a 
ightarrow _\emptyset \quad a \ Ia 
ightarrow a \qquad a 
ightarrow a \ Ia 
ightarrow a \qquad a 
ightarrow a \ a 
a 
ightarrow a 
ightarrow a \ a 
ightarrow a \ a 
ightarrow a \ a 
ightarrow a 
ightarrow a \ a 
ightarrow a \ a 
ightarrow a \ a 
ightarrow a 
ightarrow a \ a 
ightarrow a \ a 
ightarrow a$$

4 L F 4 CF F 4 E F 4 E F 9) 4 (\*

## Composition of E-reduction diagrams

Reduction diagrams and projections:

Let  $R_1 :: t \xrightarrow{+} t'$  and  $R_2 :: t \xrightarrow{+} t'$  be two reduction sequences of r from t to t'. They are equivalent  $R_1 \cong R_2$  iff  $R_1 / R_2 = R_2 / R_1 = \emptyset$ .

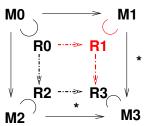
Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction strategies

Orthogonal system

### Strategies for orthogonal systems

**Lemma 11.5.** Let D be an elementary reduction diagram for orthogonal systems,  $R_i \subseteq M_i$  (i = 0, 2, 3) redexes with  $R_0 - ... \rightarrow R_2 - ... \rightarrow R_3$  i.e.  $R_2$  is residual of  $R_0$  and  $R_3$  is residual of  $R_2$ . Then there is a unique redex  $R_1 \subseteq M_1$  with  $R_0 - ... \rightarrow R_1 - ... \rightarrow R_3$ , i.e.



Notice, that in the reduction sequences  $M_1 \stackrel{+}{\rightarrow} M_3$  and  $M_2 \stackrel{+}{\rightarrow} M_3$  only residuals of the corresponding redexes in  $M_0$  are reduced. Property of elementary reduction diagrams!

## Strategies for orthogonal systems

**Definition 11.6.** Let  $\Pi$  be a predicate over term pairs M, R so that  $R \subseteq M$  and R is redex (e.g. LMOM, LMIM,...).

i)  $\Pi$  has property I when for a D like in the lemma it holds:

$$\Pi(M_0,R_0) \wedge \Pi(M_2,R_2) \wedge \Pi(M_3,R_3) \rightsquigarrow \Pi(M_1,R_1)$$

ii)  $\Pi$  has property II if in each reduction step  $M \to^R M'$  with  $\neg \Pi(M, R)$ , each redex  $S' \subseteq M'$  with  $\Pi(M', S')$  has an ancestor-redex  $S \subseteq M$  with  $\Pi(M, S)$ . (i.e.  $\neg \Pi$  steps introduce no new  $\Pi$ -redexes).

**Lemma 11.7.** Separability of developments. Assume  $\Pi$  has property II. Then each development  $R:: M_0 \to ... \to M_n$  can be partitioned in a  $\Pi$ -part followed by a  $\neg \Pi$ -part.

More precisely: There are reduction sequences

 $R_{\Pi} :: M_0 = N_0 \rightarrow^{R_0} ... \rightarrow^{R_{k-1}} N_k$  with  $\Pi(N_i, R_i)$  (i < k) and  $R_{\neg \Pi} :: N_k \rightarrow^{R_k} ... \rightarrow^{R_{k+l-1}} N_{k+l}$  with  $\neg \Pi(N_j, R_j)$   $(k \le j < k+l)$  and R is equivalent to  $R_{\Pi} \times R_{\neg \Pi}$ .



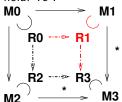
Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction strategies .

Orthogonal systems

### Example 11.8.

- $ightharpoonup \Pi(M,R)$  iff R is redex in M. I and II hold.
- ▶  $\Pi(M,R)$  iff R is an outermost redex in M. Then properties I and II hold: To I



 $R_0, R_2, R_3$  outermost redexes Let  $S_i$  be the redex in  $M_0 \rightarrow M_i$ Assuming that is not  $OM \rightsquigarrow In \ M_1$  a redex (P) is generated by the reduction of  $S_1$ , that contains  $R_1$ .

In  $M_1 \rightarrow > M_3$   $R_1$  becomes again outermost. i.e. P is reduced: But in  $M_1 \rightarrow > M_3$  only residuals of  $S_2$  are reduced and P is not residual, since was newly introduced.  $\frac{1}{2}$ . It is clear.

▶  $\Pi(M,R)$  iff R is left-most redex in M. I holds. II not always:  $F(x,b) \rightarrow d$ ,  $a \rightarrow b$ ,  $c \rightarrow c$  ::  $F(c,a) \rightarrow F(c,b)$ 

## Descendants of redexes (residuals)

**Definition 11.9.** *Traces in reduction sequences:* 

- ▶ Let  $\mathfrak{R} :: M_0 \to M_1 \to \dots$  be a reduction sequence. Let  $M_j$  be fixed and  $L_i \subseteq M_i$   $(i \ge j)$  (provided that  $M_i$  exists) redexes with  $L_j \dots \to L_{j+1} \dots \to \dots$ . The sequence  $\mathfrak{L} = (L_{j+i})_{i \ge 0}$  is a trace of descendants (residuals) of redexes in  $M_j$ .
- $\mathfrak{L}$  is called  $\Pi$ -trace, in case that  $\forall i \geq j \ \Pi(M_i, L_i)$ .
- ▶ Let R be a reduction sequence,  $\Pi$  a predicate. R is  $\Pi$ -fair, if R has no infinite  $\Pi$ -Traces.

Results from Bergstra, Klop :: Conditional Rewrite Rules: Confluence and Termination. JCSS 32 (1986)

∢ロト∢御ト∢恵ト∢恵ト 連 めの

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

...

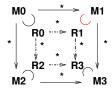
Reduction strategies

Orthogonal system

## Properties of Traces

**Lemma 11.10.** Let  $\Pi$  be a predicate with property I.

▶ Let  $\mathfrak{D}$  be a reduction diagram with  $R_i \subseteq M_i, R_0 - . - . \rightarrow R_1 - . - . \rightarrow R_3$  is  $\Pi$  trace.



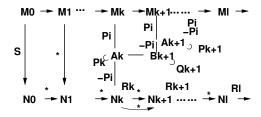
Then  $R_0 - ... \rightarrow R_1 - ... \rightarrow R_3$  via  $M_1$  also a  $\Pi$  trace

▶ Let  $\mathfrak{R}, \mathfrak{R}'$  be equivalent reduction sequences from  $M_0$  to M.  $S \subseteq M_0, S' \subseteq M$  redexes, so that a  $\Pi$ -trace  $S - . - . \to > S'$  via  $\mathfrak{R}$  exists. Then there is a unique  $\Pi$ -trace  $S - . - . \to > S'$  via  $\mathfrak{R}'$ .

### Main Theorem of O'Donnell 77

**Theorem 11.11.** Let  $\Pi$  be a predicate with properties I,II. Then the class of  $\Pi$ -fair reduction sequences is closed w.r. to projections.

#### Proof Idea:



Let  $\mathfrak{R}:: M_0 \to ...$  be  $\Pi$ -fair and  $\mathfrak{R}':: N_0 \stackrel{*}{\to}$  a projection.  $\forall k \exists M_k \xrightarrow{\Pi} > A_k \xrightarrow{\neg \Pi} > N_k$  equivalent to the complete development  $M_k \rightarrow N_k$ . In the resulting rearrangement both derivations between  $N_k$ and  $N_{k+1}$  are equivalent. In particular the  $\Pi$ -Traces remain the same. Results in an echelon form:  $A_k - B_{k+1} - A_{k+1} - B_{k+2} - \dots$ 

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

365

Reduction strategies

Orthogonal systems

### Main Theorem: Proof

This echelon reaches  $\Re$  after a finite number of steps, let's say in  $M_l$ :: If not  $\Re$  would have an infinite trace of S residuals with property  $\Pi$ .

Let's assume that  $\Re'$  is not  $\Pi$  fair. Hence it contains an infinite  $\Pi$  -trace  $R_k, ..., R_{k+1}...$  that starts from  $N_k$ .

There are  $\Pi$ -ancestors  $P_k \subseteq A_k$  from the  $\Pi$ -redex  $R_k \subseteq N_k$ , i.e with  $\Pi(A_k, P_k)$ . Then the  $\Pi$ -trace  $P_k - . - . \rightarrow R_k - . - . \rightarrow R_{k+1}$  can be lifted via  $B_{k+1}$  to the  $\Pi$ -trace  $P_k - . - . \rightarrow > Q_{k+1} - . - . \rightarrow > R_{k+1}$ .

Iterating this construction until  $M_l$ , a redex  $P_l$  that is predecessor of  $R_l$ with  $\Pi(M_l, P_l)$  is obtained. This argument can be now continued with  $R_{l+1}$ .

Consequently  $\mathfrak{R}$  is not  $\Pi$ -fair.  $\xi$ .

### Consequences

**Lemma 11.12.** Let  $\mathfrak{R} :: M_0 \to M_1 \to ...$  be an infinite sequence of reductions with infinite outermost redex-reductions. Let  $S \subseteq M_0$  be a redex. Then  $\mathfrak{R}' = \mathfrak{R}/\{S\}$  is also infinite.

**Proof:** Assume that  $\Re'$  is finite with length k. Let l > k and  $R_l$  be the redex in the reduction of  $M_l \to M_{l+1}$  and let  $\mathfrak{R}_l$  de development from  $M_l$ 

- If  $R_l$  is outermost, then  $M_l' \stackrel{*}{\to} M_{l+1}'$  can only be empty if  $R_l$  is one of the residuals of S which are reduced in  $\mathfrak{R}_l$ . Thus  $\mathfrak{R}_{l+1}$  has one step less than  $\mathfrak{R}_{\iota}$ .
- Otherwise  $R_l$  is properly contained in the residual of S reduced in  $\mathfrak{R}_l$ .

However given that  $\Re$  must contain infinitely many outermost redex-reductions then  $\mathfrak{R}_a$  would become empty. Consequently  $\mathfrak{R}'$  must coincide with  $\Re$  from some position on, hence it is also infinite.

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Reduction strategies

## Consequences for orthogonal systems

**Theorem 11.13.** Let  $\Pi(M,R)$  iff R is outermost redex in M.

- ▶ The fair outermost reduction sequences are terminating, when they start from a term which has a normal form.
- ▶ Parallel-Outermost is normalizing for orthogonal systems.

**Proof:** If t has a normal form, then there is no infinite  $\Pi$ -fair reduction sequence that starts with t.

Let  $\mathfrak{R}::t\to t_1\to ...\to be$  an infinite  $\Pi$ -fair and  $\mathfrak{R}'::t\to t_1'\to ...\to \overline{t}$ a normal form.

R contains infinitely many outermost reduction steps (otherwise it would not  $\Pi$ -fair). Then  $\Re / \Re'$  also infinite. 4.

Observe that: The theorem doesn't hold for LMOM-strategy: property II is not fulfilled. Consider for this purpose  $a \to b, c \to c, f(x, b) \to d$ .

## Consequences for orthogonal systems

**Definition 11.14.** Let R be orthogonal,  $I \rightarrow r \in R$  is called *left normal*, if in I all the function symbols appear left of the variables. R is *left normal*, if all the rules in R are left normal.

**Consequence 11.15.** Let R be left normal. Then the following holds:

- Fair leftmost reduction sequences are terminating for terms with a normal forms.
- ► The LMOM-strategy is normalizing.

**Proof:** Let  $\Pi(M, L)$  iff L is LMO-redex in M. Then the properties I and II hold. For II left normal is needed.

According to theorem 11.2 the  $\Pi$ -fair reduction sequences are closed under projections. From Lemma 11.4 the statement follows.



## Summary

A strategy is called perpetual if it can induce infinite reduction sequences.

Strategy	Orthogonal	LN-Ortogonal	Orthogonal-NE
LMIM	p	p	рn
PIM	p	p	рn
LMOM		n	рn
POM	n	n	рn
FSR	n c	n c	рпс

## Classification of TES according to appearances of variables

**Definition 11.16.** Let R be TES,  $Var(r) \subseteq Var(l)$  for  $l \rightarrow r \in R, x \in Var(l)$ .

- ▶ R is called variable reducing, if for every  $I \rightarrow r \in R$ ,  $|I|_x > |r|_x$  R is called variable preserving, if for every  $I \rightarrow r \in R$ ,  $|I|_x = |r|_x$ R is called variable augmenting, if for every  $I \rightarrow r \in R$ ,  $|I|_x \le |r|_x$
- ▶ Let D[t, t'] be a derivation from t to t'. Let |D[t, t']| the length of the reduction sequence. D[t, t'] is optimal if it has the minimal length among all the derivations from t to t'.

**Lemma 11.17.** Let R be orthogonal, variable preserving. Then every redex remains in each reduction sequence, unless it is reduced. Each derivation sequence is optimal.

**Proof:** Exchange technique: residuals remain as residuals, as long as they are not reduced, i.e. the reduction steps can be interchanged.

	←□ → ←□ → ← ≥ → ← ≥ →	4	990
Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques			371
Reduction strategies .			
000000000000000000000000000000000000000			
Strategies and length of derivations			

## **Examples**

#### **Example 11.18.** Lengths of derivations:

- ▶ Variable preserving:  $R :: f(x,y) \to g(h(x,y)), g(x,y) \to l(x,y), a \to c.$ Consider the term f(a,b) and its derivations. All derivation sequences are of the same length.
- ▶ Variable augmenting (non erasing):  $R :: f(x,b) \to g(x,x), a \to b, c \to d$ . Consider the term f(c,a) and its derivations. Innermost derivation sequences are shorter.

### **Further Results**

**Lemma 11.19.** Let R be overlap free, variable augmenting. Then an innermost redex remains until it is reduced.

**Theorem 11.20.** Let R be orthogonal variable augmenting (ne). Let D[t,t'] be a derivation sequence from t to its normal form t', which is non-innermost. Then there is an innermost derivation D'[t,t'] with  $|D'| \leq |D|$ .

**Proof:** Let L(D) = derivation length from the first non-innermost reduction in D to t'.

Induction over L(D) ::  $t \to t_1 \to ... \to t_i \xrightarrow{S} ... \to t_j \xrightarrow{*} t'$ . Let i be this position.

S is non-innermost in  $t_i$ , hence it contains an innermost redex  $S_i$  that must be reduced later on, let's say in the reduction of  $t_i$ . Consider the

reduction sequence 
$$D':: t \to t_1 \to ... \to t_i \stackrel{S_i}{\to} t'_{i+1} \stackrel{S}{\to} ... t'_j \stackrel{*}{\to} t'$$
  $|D'| \leq |D|, L(D') < L(D) \implies$  there is a derivation  $D'$  with  $L(D') = 0$ .



373

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction strategies

Strategies and length of derivations

### Further Results

**Theorem 11.21.** Let R be overlap free, variable augmenting. Every two innermost derivations to a normal form are equally long.

Sure! given that innermost redexes are disjoint and remain preserved as long as they are not reduced.

Consequence:Let R be left linear, variable augmenting. Then innermost derivations are optimal. Especially LMIM is optimal.

**Example 11.22.** If there are several outermost redexes, then the length of the derivation sequences depend on the choice of the redexes. Consider:

$$f(x,c) \rightarrow d, a \rightarrow d, b \rightarrow c$$
 and the derivations:

$$f(\underline{a},b) o f(d,\underline{b}) o \underline{f(d,c)} o d$$
 and respectively  $f(a,\underline{b}) o \underline{f(a,c)} o d$ 

~ variable delay strategy. If an outermost redex after a reduction step is no longer outermost, then it is located below a variable of a redex originated in the reduction. If this rule deletes this variable, then the redex must not be reduced.

4□ > 4□ > 4□ > 4□ > 4□ > 4□

#### **Further Results**

**Theorem 11.23.** Let R be overlap free.

- ▶ Let D be an outermost derivation and L a non-variable outermost redex in D. Then L remains a non-variable outermost redex until it is reduced.
- ▶ Let R be linear. For each outermost derivation D[t, t'], t' normal form, exists a variable delaying derivation D[t, t'] with  $|D'| \le |D|$ . Consequently the variable delaying derivations are optimal.

**Theorem 11.24.** Ke Li. The following problem is NP-complete:

Input: A convergent TES R, term t and  $D[t, t \downarrow]$ . Question: Is there a derivation  $D'[t, t \downarrow]$  with |D'| < |D|.

Proof Idea: Reduce 3-SAT to this problem.

←□▶ ←□▶ ←□▶ ←□▶ ←□ ♥ ♀

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction strategies

Strategies and length of derivations

### Computable Strategies

**Definition 11.25.** A reduction strategy  $\mathfrak{S}$  is computable, if the mapping  $\mathfrak{S}$ : Term  $\to$  Term with  $t \stackrel{*}{\to} \mathfrak{S}(t)$  is recursive.

Observe that: The strategies LMIM, PIM, LMOM, POM, FSR are polynomially computable.

Question: Is there a one-step computable normalizing strategy for orthogonal systems ?.

#### **Example 11.26.**

- ▶ (Berry) CL-calculus extended at rules FABx → C, FBxA → C, FxAB → C is orthogonal, non-left-normal. Which argument does one choose for the reduction of FMNL? Each argument can be evaluated to A resp. B, however this is undecidable in CL.
- ► Consider or(true, x)  $\rightarrow$  true, or(x, true)  $\rightarrow$  true + CL. Parallel evaluation seems to be necessary!

Strategies and length of derivations

## Computable Strategies: Counterexample

**Example 11.27.** Signature: Constants: S, K, S', K', C, 0, 1 unary: A, activate binary: A, ap' ternary: B

Rules:

$$ap(ap(ap(S,x),y),z) \rightarrow ap(ap(x,y),ap(y,z))$$
  
 $ap(ap(K,x),y) \rightarrow x$   
 $activate(S') \rightarrow S$ ,  $activate(K') \rightarrow K$   
 $activate(ap'(x,y)) \rightarrow ap(activate(x),activate(y))$   
 $A(x) \rightarrow B(0,x,activate(x))$ ,  $A(x) \rightarrow B(1,x,activate(x))$   
 $B(0,x,S) \rightarrow C$ ,  $B(1,x,K) \rightarrow C$ ,  $B(x,y,z) \rightarrow A(y)$ 

**Terms**: Starting with terms of form A(t) where t is constructed from S', K' and ap'.

**Claim**: R is confluent and has no computable one step strategy which is normalizing.

□ > 4 周 > 4 章 > 4 章 > ■ 9 Q Q

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

377

Reduction strategies

Strategies and length of derivations

### A sequential Strategy for paror Systems

**Example 11.28.** Let  $f,g:\mathbb{N}^+\to\mathbb{N}$  recursive functions. Define term rewriting system R on  $\mathbb{N}\times\mathbb{N}$  with rules:

- $\blacktriangleright$   $(x,y) \rightarrow (f(x),y)$  if x,y>0
- ▶  $(x,y) \to (x,g(y))$  if x,y > 0
- $(x,0) \to (0,0) \text{ if } x > 0$
- ▶  $(0, y) \rightarrow (0, 0)$  if y > 0

Obviously R is confluent. Unique normal form is (0,0) and for x,y>0,

(x,y) has a normal form iff  $\exists n. \ f^n(x) = 0 \lor g^n(x) = 0$ .

A one step reductions strategy must choose among the application of f res. g in the first res. second argument.

Such a reduction strategy cannot compute first the zeros of  $f^n(x)$  res.  $g^n(y)$  in order to choose the corresponding argument. One could expect, that there are appropriate functions f and g for which no computable one step strategy exists. But this is not the case!!

### A sequential strategy for paror systems

There exists a computable one step reduction strategy which is normalizing.

**Lemma 11.29.** *Let*  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}$ *. Then:* 

- ▶ x < y:: For n either  $f^n(x) = 0$  or  $f^n(x) \ge y$  or there exists an i < n with  $f^n(x) = f^i(x) \ne 0$  holds. Choose n minimal with this property. The three alternatives are mutually excluding. If one of the first two holds then  $\mathfrak{S}(x,y) = L$  else R
- ▶  $x \ge y$ :: Für n either  $g^n(y) = 0$  or  $g^n(y) > x$  or there exists an i < n with  $g^n(y) = g^i(y) \ne 0$ . Choose n minimal with this property. The three alternatives are mutually excluding. If one of the first two holds then  $\mathfrak{S}(x,y) = R$  else L
- ► Claim: S is a computable one step reduction strategy for R which is normalizing. (Proof: Exercise)

◆ロト ◆部ト ◆注ト ◆注 ・ りゅ

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniques

Reduction strategies

Strategies and length of derivations

### Computable Strategies

**Theorem 11.30.** Kennaway (Annals of Pure and Applied Logic 43(89)) For each orthogonal system there is a computable sequential (one step) normalising reduction strategy.

#### **Definition 11.31.** Standard reduction sequences

Let  $\mathfrak{R}::t_0\to t_1\to ...$  be a reduction sequence in the TES R. Mark in each step in  $\mathfrak{R}$  all top-symbols of redexes that appear on the left side of the reduced redex.  $\mathfrak{R}$  is a standard reduction sequence if no redex with marked top-symbol is ever reduced.

#### Theorem 11.32.

Standardization theorem for left-normal orthogonal TES.

Let R be LNO.

If  $t \stackrel{*}{\to} s$  holds, then there exists a standard reduction sequence in R with  $t \stackrel{*}{\to}_{ST} s$ .

Especially LMOM is normalizing.

Sequential Orthogonal TES: Call by Need

## Sequential Orthogonal TES

**Example 11.33.** For applicative TES::  $PxQ \rightarrow xx$ ,  $R \rightarrow S$ ,  $Ix \rightarrow x$ Consider  $\mathfrak{R}:: PR(IQ) \rightarrow PRQ \rightarrow RR \rightarrow SR$ 

There exists no standard reduction sequence from PR(IQ) to SR

**Fact**:  $\lambda$ -Calculus and CL-Calculus are sequential, i.e. always needed redexes are reduced for computing the normal form.

**Definition 11.34.** Let R be orthogonal,  $t \in Term(R)$  with normal form  $t \perp A \text{ redex } s \subseteq t \text{ is a } \frac{\text{needed}}{\text{needed}} \text{ redex}$ , if in every reduction sequence  $t \rightarrow ... \rightarrow t \downarrow$  some residual of s is reduced (contracted).

Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Technique

Reduction strategies

Sequential Orthogonal TES: Call by Need

## Sequential Orthogonal TES: Call-by-need

**Theorem 11.35.** Huet- Levy (1979) Let R be orthogonal

- ▶ Let t with a normal form but reducible . then t contains a needed
- ▶ "Call-by-need" Strategy (needed redexes are contracted) is normalizing
- ► Fair needed-redex reduction sequences are terminating for terms with a normal form.

**Lemma 11.36.** Let R be orthogonal,  $t \in Term(R)$ , s, s' redexes in t s.t.  $s \subseteq s'$ . If s is needed, then also s' is.

In particular:: If t is not in normal form, then a outermost redex is a needed redex.

Let C[...,...] be a context with n-places (holes),  $\sigma$  a substitution of the redexes  $s_1, ..., s_n$  in places 1, ..., n. The Lemma implies the following property:

 $\forall C[...,...]$  in normal form,  $\forall \sigma \exists i.s_i$  needed in  $C[s_1,...,s_n]$ .

Which one of the  $s_i$  is needed, depends on  $\sigma$ .

Reduction strategies

Sequential Orthogonal TES: Call by Need

## Sequential Orthogonal TES

**Definition 11.37.** Let R be orthogonal.

- ▶ R is sequential\* iff  $\forall C[...,...]$  in normal form  $\exists i \forall \sigma.s_i$  is needed in  $C[s_1, ..., s_n]$ Unfortunately this property is undecidable
- ▶ Let C[...] context. The reduction relation  $\rightarrow_?$  (possible reduction) is defined by

 $C[s] \rightarrow_? C[r]$  for each redex s and arbitrary term r

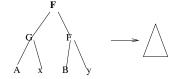
- $\rightarrow_{7}^{*}$  and residuals defined in analogy.
- ► A redex s in t is called **strongly needed** if in every reduction sequence  $t \rightarrow_? ... \rightarrow_? t'$ , where t' is a normal form, some descendant of s gets reduced.
- ▶ R is strongly sequential if  $\forall C[...,...,..]$  in normal form  $\exists i \forall \sigma.s_i$  is strongly needed.

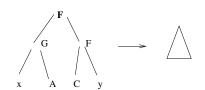
Prof. Dr. K. Madlener: Formal Specification and Verification Techniq

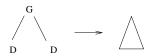
Reduction strategies

Sequential Orthogonal TES: Call by Need

## Example







Ist nicht stark sequentiell F(G(1,2),F(G(3,4),5))

## **Strong Sequentiality**

#### **Lemma 11.38.** Let R be orthogonal.

- ➤ The property of being strongly sequential is decidable. The needed index i is computable.

  Proof: See e.g. Huet-Levy
- ► Call-by-need is a computable one step reduction strategy for such systems.

